

Owner's Manual for
Vehicle



The Ultimate Driving
Machine

Contents A-Z



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Z4 sDrive30i
Z4 sDrive35i
Z4 sDrive35is

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

Supplementary information can be found in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable drive.

BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

BMW recommends 

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

© 2010 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written
consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English II/10, 03 10 500
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the [index, refer to page 234](#).

Using this Owner's Manual

6 Notes

At a glance

12 Cockpit

18 iDrive

24 Voice activation system

Controls

28 Opening and closing

42 Adjusting

48 Transporting children safely

50 Driving

62 Displays

75 Lamps

80 Safety

87 Driving stability control systems

91 Driving comfort

95 Climate control

101 Interior equipment

107 Storage compartments

Driving tips

112 Things to remember when driving

Navigation

120 Navigation system

121 Destination entry

130 Destination guidance

137 What to do if...

Entertainment

140 Tone

142 Radio

149 CD/multimedia

Communication

166 Telephone

176 Contacts

179 BMW Assist

Mobility

186 Refueling

187 Fuel

189 Wheels and tires

197 Engine compartment

202 Maintenance

204 Replacing components

209 Giving and receiving assistance

215 Care

Reference

222 Technical data

226 Short commands for voice activation system

234 Everything from A to Z

ایراد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۶۲۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.


An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any questions, your service center will be glad to advise you at any time.

Information on BMW, e.g., on technology, is available on the Internet: bmwusa.com.

Symbols

 Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.


◄ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional accessories, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.


"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

>...< Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

»...« Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

 Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

Symbols on vehicle components

 Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Your individual vehicle

You have decided in favor of a vehicle with individualized equipment and features.

This Owner's Manual describes the entire array of options and equipment available for a specific model.

As a result, the manual may contain accessories and equipment that you may not have specified for your own vehicle.

All options and special equipment are marked with an asterisk*.

For options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

On right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently than shown in the illustrations.

Status at publication

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair methods.

Therefore, have this work performed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with appropriately trained personnel.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends using parts and accessories approved by BMW for this purpose.

Your BMW center is the right contact for genuine BMW parts and accessories, other products approved by BMW and related qualified advice.

BMW has tested these products for safety and suitability in relation to BMW vehicles.

BMW can assume responsibility for them. However, we cannot assume any responsibility whatsoever for parts and accessories that have not been specifically approved by BMW.

BMW cannot evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard. This guarantee is also not applicable when country-specific government approval has been granted. Testing of this kind may fail to embrace the entire range of potential operating conditions to which components might be exposed on BMW vehicles. Such products could conceivably fail to comply with BMW's own stringent quality standards.

Parts and Accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW. When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle. BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship. BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW. BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants. Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available

from all BMW centers. Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information. Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▶ New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- ▶ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- ▶ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty

- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

rcar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa ON K1A 0N5.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [8](http://www.safe-</p>
</div>
<div data-bbox=)

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

At a glance

These overviews of buttons, switches and displays are intended to familiarize you with your vehicle. You will also become quickly acquainted with the available control concepts and options.

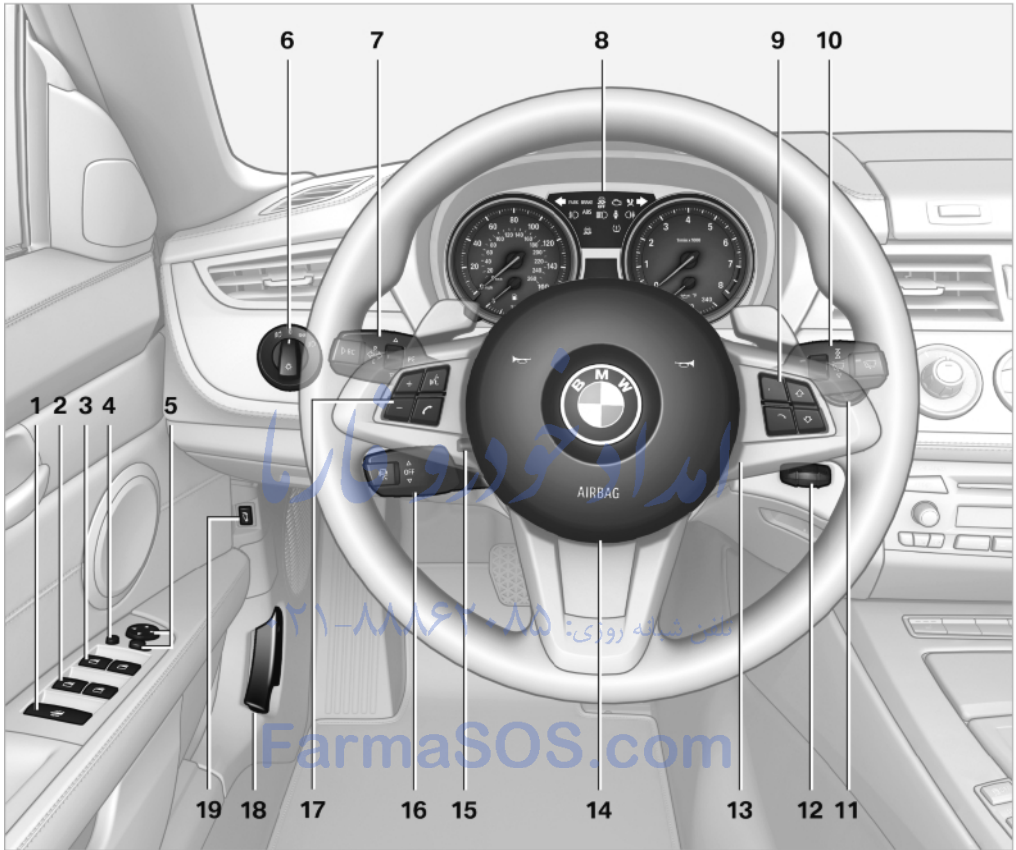
امداد خودرو فارما







تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵





















FarmaSOS.com

Cockpit

All around the steering wheel



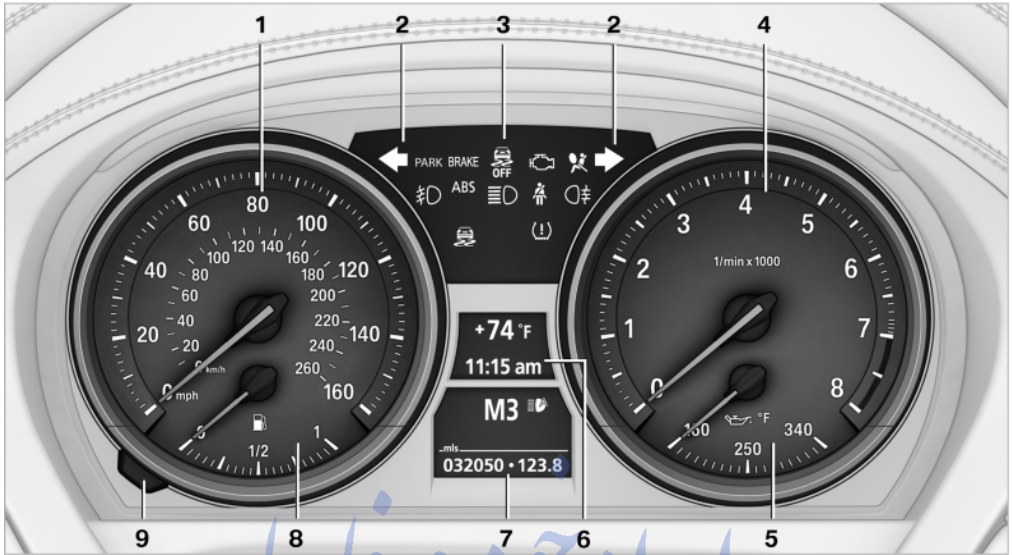
- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1  Opening and closing windows jointly 38</p> <p>2  Opening and closing rear windows 38</p> <p>3  Opening and closing front windows 38</p> <p>4 Exterior mirrors, folding in and out* 45</p> <p>5 Adjust the exterior mirrors, Automatic Curb Monitor* 45</p> | <p>6  Parking lamps 75</p> <p> Low beams 75</p> <p> Automatic headlamp control* 76</p> <p>Adaptive light control* 76</p> <p>High-beam Assistant* 77</p> |
|---|--|

- 7  Turn signal 53
-  High beams, head-lamp flasher 77
-  High-beam Assistant* 77
-  Roadside parking lamps* 77
-  Computer 63
-  Settings and information about the vehicle 65
- 8 Instrument cluster 14
- 9 Buttons* on the steering wheel
-  Change the radio station
-  Select a music track
-  Leaf through the phone book and through lists with stored phone numbers
-  Next entertainment source
-  Recirculated air mode 100
- 10  Windshield wipers 54
-  Rain sensor* 54
- 11  Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 50
- 12 Ignition lock 50
- 13  Steering wheel heating* 47
- 14 Horn, the entire surface
- 15 Adjust the steering wheel 47
- 16  Cruise control* 91
- 17 Buttons* on the steering wheel
-  Telephone*
-  Volume
-  Activate/deactivate the voice activation system* 24
- 18 Releasing the hood 197
- 19  Open the trunk lid 33

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Instrument cluster



VWDC5C5600W

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1 Speedometer</p> <p>2 Indicator lamps for turn signals</p> <p>3 Indicator/warning lamps 15</p> <p>4 Tachometer 62</p> <p>5 Engine oil temperature 63</p> <p>6 Display for</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Clock 62 ▷ External temperature 62 ▷ Indicator/warning lamps 15 <p>7 Display for</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Automatic transmission position* 56 ▷ Gear display for 7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch* 58 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Computer 63 ▷ Date of next scheduled service, and remaining distance to be driven 69 ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 62 ▷ Programs for Dynamic Driving Control 88 ▷ High-beam Assistant* 77 ▷ Checking engine oil level 198 ▷ Settings and information 65 ▷ ▲ Check Control message present 71 <p>8 Fuel gauge 63</p> <p>9 Resetting the trip odometer 62</p> |
|---|---|

Indicator/warning lamps

Instrument cluster



The indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on, and light up briefly.

Text messages

Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

You can call up more information, e.g., on the cause of a malfunction and on how to respond, via [Check Control](#), refer to [page 71](#).

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

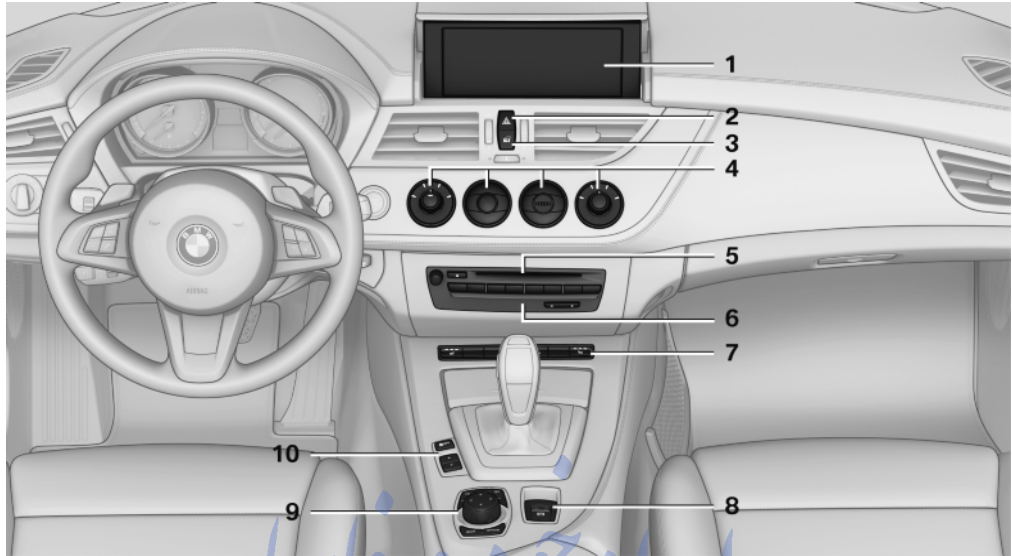
Indicator lamps without text messages

The following indicator lamps notify you that certain functions are active:

Symbol	Function or system
	Turn signal
	High beams/headlamp flasher
	Lamp flashes: DSC or DTC is regulating the propulsive forces in order to maintain driving stability
	Parking brake set
	Canada: the parking brake is set.
	Engine malfunction with adverse effect on exhaust emissions
	Canada: engine malfunction with adverse effect on exhaust emissions

FarmaSOS.com




All around the center console



- | | | | | | |
|---|--|-----|----|-------------------------------------|----|
| 1 | Control Display | 18 | 8 | Parking brake | 52 |
| 2 | Hazard warning system | 209 | 9 | Controller with buttons | 18 |
| 3 | Central locking system | 32 | 10 | Buttons for Dynamic Driving Control | 88 |
| 4 | ▷ Air conditioner | 96 | | | |
| | ▷ Automatic climate control* | 98 | | | |
| 5 | Hard drive for | | | | |
| | ▷ Audio CD/DVD | 149 | | | |
| | ▷ Navigation DVD* | 120 | | | |
| 6 | Controls for | | | | |
| | ▷ Radio | 142 | | | |
| | ▷ CD/DVD | 149 | | | |
| 7 |  Seat heating* | 43 | | | |
| |  Park Distance Control
PDC* | 93 | | | |
| |  Close the retractable hard-
top | 39 | | | |
| |  Open the retractable hard-
top | 39 | | | |

All around the headliner



- 1  Emergency Request* 209
- 2 Reading lamp 79
- 3 Interior lamps 79
- 4  Reading lamp 79
- 5  Indicator lamp, front passenger airbag* 81


تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

iDrive

The concept

The iDrive combines the functions of a multitude of switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

 Using the iDrive during a trip
To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard to your vehicle's occupants and to other road users, never attempt to use the controls or enter information unless traffic and road conditions allow this. ◀

Controls at a glance

Controls



- 1 Control Display
- 2 Controller with buttons


The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and create the settings.

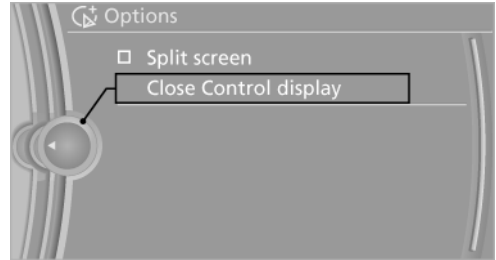
Control Display

Notes

- ▷ To clean the Control Display, follow the [care instructions](#), refer to [page 217](#).
- ▷ Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.

Switching off

1.  Press the button.
2. "Close control display"



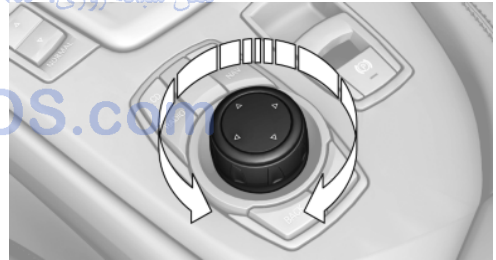
Switching on

Press the controller again to switch the screen back on.

Controller

Select menu items and create settings.

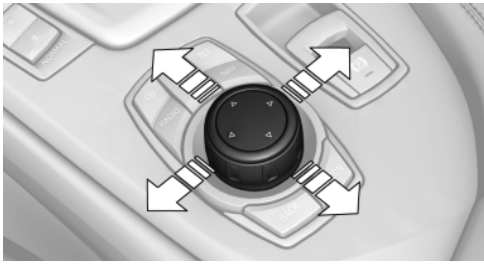
1. Turn.



2. Press.



3. Move in four directions.




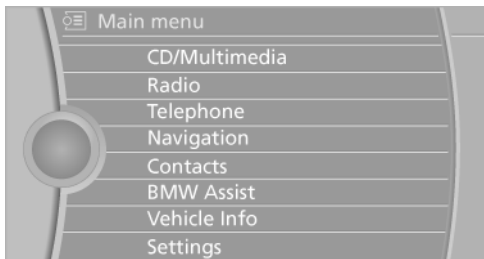
Buttons on controller

Press the button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
RADIO	Opens the Radio menu.
CD	Opens the CD/Multimedia menu.
NAV	Opens the Navigation menu.
TEL	Opens the Telephone menu.
BACK	Displays the previous panel.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating concept

Opening the main menu

 Press the button.



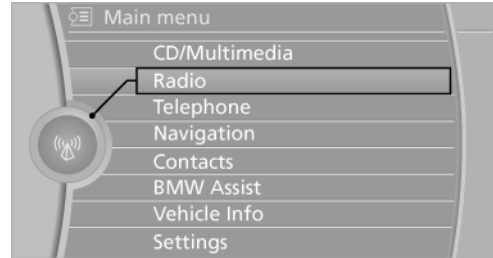
The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

Menu items shown in white can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Settings".

Changing between panels

After a menu item is selected, e.g., "Radio", a new panel is displayed. Panels can overlap.

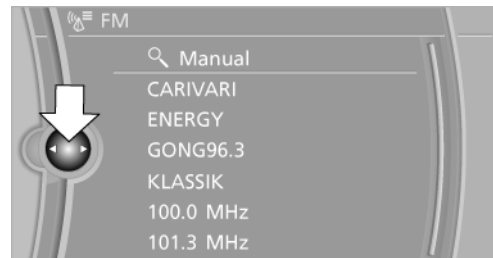
- ▶ Move the controller to the left.

The current panel is closed and the previous panel is displayed.

The previous panel is opened again by pressing the BACK button. In this case, the current panel is not closed.

- ▶ Move the controller to the right.

A new panel is opened on top of the previous display.



White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

View of an opened menu

When a menu is opened, it generally opens with the panel that was last selected in that menu. To display the first panel of a menu:

- ▷ Move the controller to the left repeatedly until the first panel is displayed.
- ▷ Press the menu button on the controller twice.

Opening the Options menu



Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



Additional options: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

Options menu

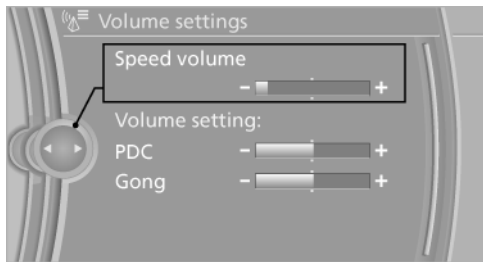
The "Options" menu consists of various areas:

- ▷ Screen settings, for instance "Split screen".
This area remains unchanged.
- ▷ Control options for the selected main menu, e.g., for "Radio".
- ▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, for instance "Store station".

Changing settings

1. Select a field.

2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the controller.


Activating/deactivating the functions

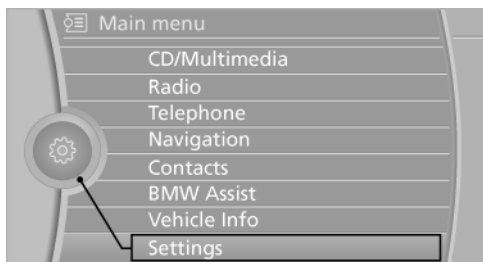
Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

- The function is activated.
- The function is deactivated.

Example: setting the clock

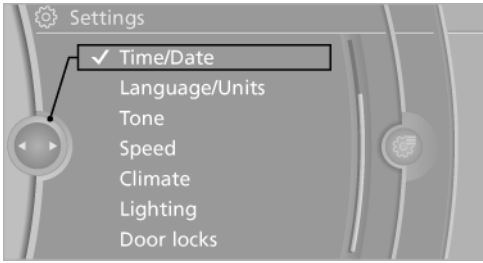
Setting the clock

1.  Press the button. The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.

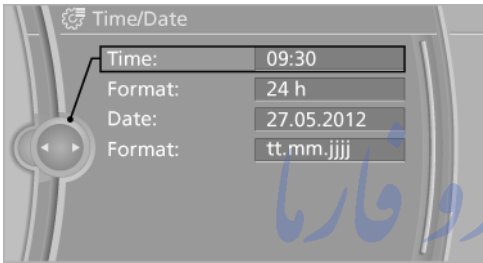


3. If necessary, move the controller to the left to display "Time/Date".

- Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



- Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



- Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
- Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

Status information

Status field

The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:

- ▷ Time.
- ▷ Current entertainment source.
- ▷ Sound output, on/off.
- ▷ Wireless network reception strength.
- ▷ Telephone status.
- ▷ Traffic bulletin reception.

Status field symbols

The symbols are grouped into various categories.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Traffic bulletins* switched on.
	HD Radio* switched on.
	Satellite radio* switched on



Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call*
	Missed call*
	Wireless network reception strength* Symbol flashes: searching for network
	Wireless network is not available*.
	Bluetooth* is switched on.
	Roaming* is active
	Text message* was received.
	Check the SIM card*.
	SIM card* is blocked.
	SIM card* is missing.
	Enter the PIN*.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD* player
	Music collection*
	Gracenote® database*
	AUX-IN port
	USB audio interface*

Additional symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Spoken instructions* are switched off.
	Request of the current vehicle position*.


Split screen

General information

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, e.g., information from the computer.


In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

Switching the split screen on and off

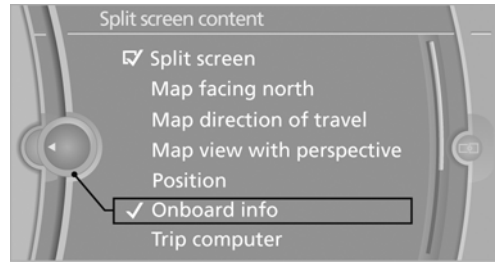
-  Press the button.
- "Split screen"

The split screen view is activated.

Selecting the display

-  Press the button.
- "Split screen"
- Move the controller until the split screen is selected.
- Select one of the following settings:
 - ▷ "Onboard info"
 - ▷ "Trip computer"

- ▷ "Entertainment details"




Programmable memory buttons

General information


The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and entry points into the menu.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Saving a function

- Highlight the function via the iDrive.
-  Press the desired button for more than two seconds.

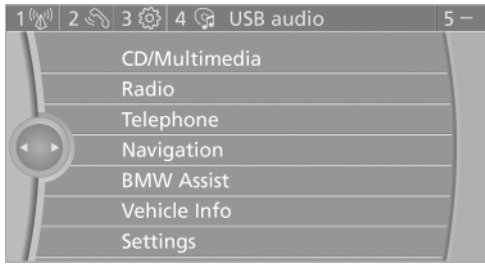
Running a function

-  Press the button.
The function will run immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the button assignment

Use a finger to touch the buttons. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The key assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.



- ▶ To display short information: touch the button.
- ▶ To display detailed information: touch the button for an extended period.

Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 6 simultaneously for approx. five seconds.
2. "OK"

Entering letters and numbers

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

Symbol	Function
⬅	Press the controller: delete the letter or number.
⬅	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.
□	Enter a blank space.

Switching between letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering letters and numbers.

Symbol	Function
A ^B C	Enter the letters.
1 ² 3	Enter the numbers.

Switching between upper and lower case letters

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering uppercase and lowercase letters.

Symbol	Function
▲ abc	Move the controller up: switch from upper to lower case letters.
▲ ABC	Move the controller up: switch from lower to upper case letters.

Entry comparison

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

The entries are continuously compared to the data stored in the vehicle.

- ▶ Only those letters are offered during the entry for which data is available.
- ▶ Destination search: town/city names can be entered using the spelling of language available on the Control Display.

Voice activation system*

The concept

- ▷ The voice activation system can be used to operate equipment by means of spoken commands.
- ▷ The system encompasses special microphones in the vicinity of the steering wheel.
- ▷ Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands. The system prompts you to make your entries.
- ▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions in the Owner's Manual to use with the voice activation system.


Requirements


On the Control Display, set the language to be used with the voice activation system to enable the system to identify the voice commands.

Set the language, refer to page 68.

Using voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Say the command.
The command appears on the Control Display.

 This symbol on the Control Display indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no further commands are available, continue operating the equipment via the iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Having possible commands read aloud

The commands available in each case depend on the menu item selected on the Control Display.

Have the available spoken instructions read aloud using ›Voice commands‹.



If, for example, ›Settings‹ is selected, the commands to the settings are read aloud.

Executing functions using short commands

Functions on the main menu can be performed directly by means of short commands, irrespective of which menu item is currently selected, for instance ›Vehicle status‹.

List of [short commands for voice activation](#), refer to page 226.

Example: playing back a CD

1. Switch on the Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›C D and multimedia‹
The medium last played is played back.
4.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
5. ›C D track ... ‹ e.g., CD track 4.

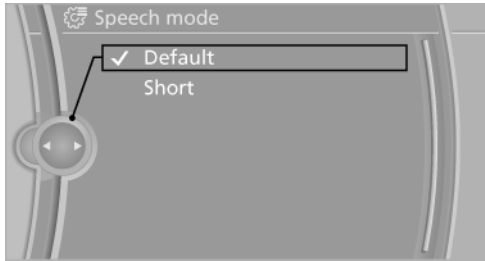
Setting the voice dialog

You can set whether the system should use the standard dialog or a shorter version.

In the shorter version of the voice dialog, the prompts and responses from the system are abbreviated.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the setting.



- ▷ When selecting a radio station, use the common pronunciation of the station name.
- ▷ Keep the doors, windows, and retractable hardtop closed to prevent noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button while giving an instruction until the desired volume is set.

- ▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the **SOS button***, refer to [page 209](#), in the vicinity of the interior rearview mirror.

Environmental conditions

- ▷ Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▷ Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information that will give you complete control of your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience are described here.

امداد خودرو فارما

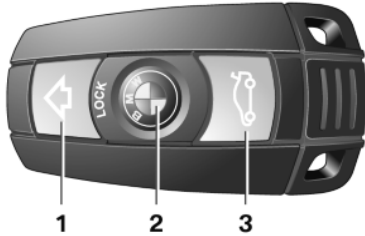
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Opening and closing

Remote control

Buttons on the remote control



- 1 Unlocking
- 2 Locking
- 3 Opening the trunk lid

General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with keys.

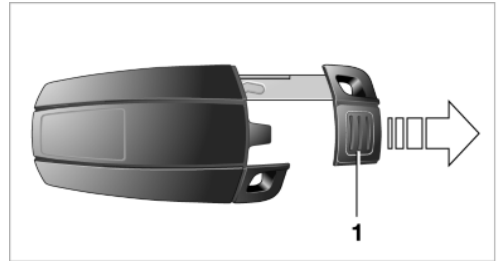
Each remote control contains a rechargeable battery that is automatically recharged when it is in the ignition lock while the car is being driven. Use each remote control at least twice a year for longer road trips in order to maintain the batteries' charge status.

In vehicles equipped with Comfort Access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 36.

The settings called up and implemented when the car is unlocked depend on which remote control is used to unlock the car, refer to Personal Profile, next column.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, [Service data in the remote control](#), refer to page 202.

Integrated key



Press button 1 and pull out the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ [Glove compartment](#), refer to page 107.
- ▷ [Driver's door](#), refer to page 32.

New remote controls

You can obtain new remote controls from your service center.

Loss of the remote controls

Lost remote controls can be blocked by your service center.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set several of your vehicle's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences.

- ▷ The settings are automatically saved in the profile currently activated.
- ▷ The remote control used is detected when the vehicle is unlocked and the stored profile is called up.
- ▷ Your personal settings will be recognized and called up again even if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by someone else with another remote control.

The individual settings are stored for a maximum of four remote controls. They are stored for two remote controls if Comfort Access* is in use.

Personal Profile settings

The following functions and settings can be stored in a profile.

More information on the settings can be found under:

- ▷ Assigning the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 22.
- ▷ Response of the central locking system when the car is being unlocked, refer to page 30.
- ▷ Automatic locking of the vehicle, refer to page 32.
- ▷ Automatic call-up* of the driver's seat position after unlocking, refer to page 45.
- ▷ Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 53.
- ▷ Settings for the display on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster:
 - ▷ 12h/24h clock format, refer to page 66.
 - ▷ Date format, refer to page 67.
 - ▷ Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page 68.
 - ▷ Language on the Control Display, refer to page 68.
 - ▷ Split screen, refer to page 22.
 - ▷ Units of measure for fuel consumption, distance covered/remaining distances and temperature, refer to page 66.
- ▷ Show visual warning for the Park Distance Control PDC*, refer to page 94.
- ▷ Light settings:
 - ▷ Welcome lamps, refer to page 75.
 - ▷ Headlamp courtesy delay feature, refer to page 75.
 - ▷ Daytime running lights, refer to page 76.
 - ▷ High-beam Assistant*, refer to page 77.
- ▷ Automatic climate control*: AUTO program, cooling function and automatic recirculated air control activated/deactivated, tempera-

ture, air flow rate and distribution, refer to page 98.

- ▷ Entertainment:
 - ▷ Audio volume, refer to page 142.
 - ▷ Tone control, refer to page 140.
 - ▷ Volume, refer to page 141.

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system becomes active when the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- ▷ Doors.
- ▷ Trunk lid.
- ▷ Fuel filler flap.
- ▷ Center armrest*.

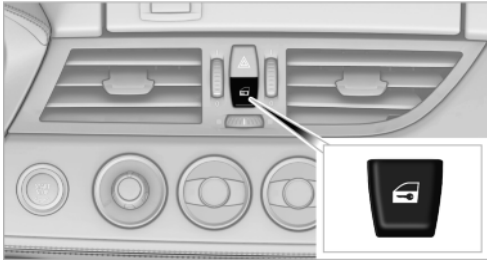
Operating from the outside

- ▷ Via the remote control.
- ▷ Via the driver's door lock.
- ▷ In cars with Comfort Access*, via the door handles on the driver's and passenger sides.

The following takes place simultaneously when locking/unlocking the vehicle via the remote control:

- ▷ The welcome lamps, interior lamps and courtesy lamps* are switched on and off.
- ▷ The alarm system* is armed or disarmed, refer to page 36.

Operating from the inside



Via the button for the central locking system.

If the vehicle is locked from the inside, the fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the central locking system unlocks automatically.

The hazard warning system and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: from the outside

Using the remote control

General information



Take the remote control with you

People or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside. ◀

Conditions for operating the retractable hardtop using the remote control:

- ▷ The doors and trunk lid are closed.
- ▷ The cargo area partition is folded down and engaged on both sides, refer to page 39.

Unlocking



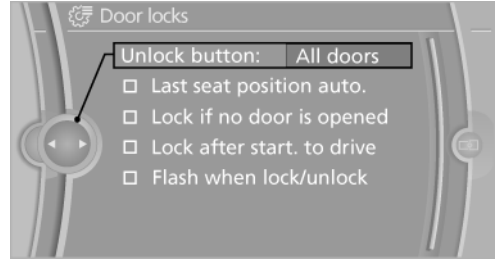
Press the button. The vehicle is unlocked.

You can set how the vehicle is to be unlocked.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"

2. "Door locks"
3. "Unlock button:"



4. Select a menu item:

- ▷ "All doors"



The entire vehicle is unlocked.

- ▷ "Driver's door only"



Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

5. Press the controller.

Convenient opening*: window and hardtop

When you are close to the vehicle, the remote control for Comfort Access can be used to open the retractable hardtop.



Press and hold the button on the remote control.

The windows and the retractable hardtop are opened if the doors are closed.



Hold the button down. When you are close to the vehicle, the windows move up after the hardtop is opened.



Monitor the opening process

Monitor the opening process to ensure that no one becomes trapped; otherwise, injuries may result. Releasing the button interrupts the opening process ◀

Locking



LOCK Press the button on the remote control.




Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be

unlocked from inside without special knowledge. ◀

Convenient closing*

When you are close to the vehicle, the remote control for Comfort Access can be used to close the retractable hardtop and the windows.

 **LOCK** Press and hold the button on the remote control.

The retractable hardtop and the windows are closed.




Monitor the closing process


Monitor the closing process to ensure that no one becomes trapped.

Releasing the button stops the motion. ◀

Switching on the interior lamps, courtesy lamps*, and welcome lamps

 **LOCK** Press the button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

Unlocking the trunk lid

 Press the button on the remote control for approx. one second.


During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.

To avoid locking yourself out of the vehicle, do not place the remote control into the trunk. A previously locked trunk lid is locked again after closing.

Before and after each trip, check that the trunk lid has not been inadvertently unlocked.


Convenient loading*

When you are close to the vehicle, the remote control for Comfort Access can be used to partially raise the open hardtop for more convenient loading of the trunk.

1.  Briefly press the button on the remote control.

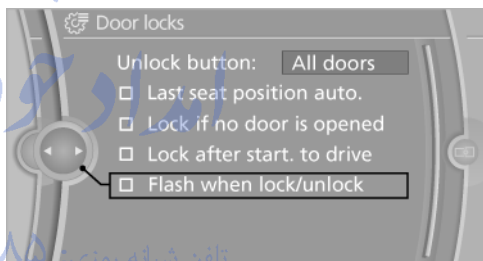
Press again within one second and hold until the retractable hardtop stops in an inter-

mediate position. The trunk lid opens slightly.


2. Open the trunk lid, press the cargo area partition upward and stow the cargo in the cargo area.
3. Press down the cargo area partition until it engages on both sides and close the trunk lid.
4.  Press the button on the remote control for an extended period to fold the retractable hardtop back in.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Flash when lock/unlock"



4. Press the controller

 Flashing to indicate locking/unlocking of the vehicle is switched on.

Malfunctions

Local radio waves may interfere with the remote control.

In this case, unlock and lock the car at the door lock with the integrated key.

If the car can no longer be locked with a remote control, the battery in the remote control is discharged. [Use the remote control during an extended drive; this will recharge the battery, refer to page 28.](#)

The remote control for Comfort Access* contains a [battery that may need to be replaced, refer to page 36.](#)

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

LX8766S

LX8766E

LX8CAS

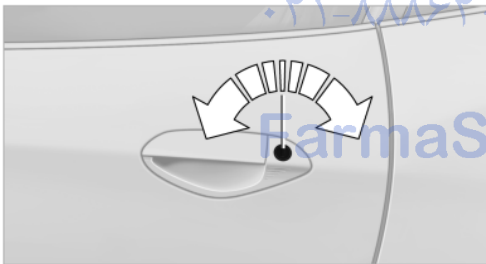
Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- ▶ This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- ▶ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Using the door lock



Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge. ◀



Remove the key before pulling the door handle

Before pulling the outside door handle, remove the key to avoid damaging the paintwork and the key. ◀

Convenience operation*

The windows and the retractable hardtop can be operated via the door lock.

Opening/closing

With the door closed, turn the key to the unlock or lock position and hold it there.

Turning the key back to the original position stops the motion.



Monitor the closing process

During every closing procedure, and when opening the retractable hardtop, watch the process and ensure that no one becomes trapped; otherwise, injuries may occur. ◀

Manual operation

If an electrical malfunction occurs, unlock or lock the driver's door using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening and closing: from the inside*



Locking and unlocking



Press the button*.

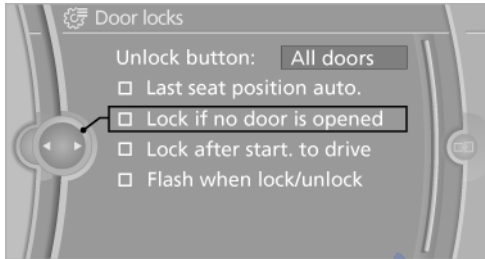
The doors and the trunk lid are locked or unlocked when the front doors are closed, but they are not secured against theft.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.


Automatic locking

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.


1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Select the desired function:
 - ▷ "Lock if no door is opened" The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if a door is not opened.
 - ▷ "Lock after start. to drive" The vehicle locks automatically after you drive away.




Unlocking and opening doors


- ▷  Press the button. The doors are unlocked. To open, pull the door handle above the armrest.
- ▷ Pull the door handle above the armrest twice: the door is unlocked the first time and opened the second time.

Locking

- ▷  Press the button. The doors are locked.
- ▷ Press the lock button of a door. To prevent you from being locked out, the opened driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

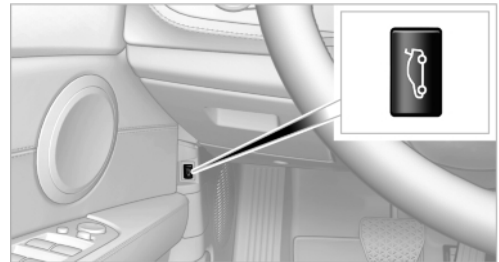
 Take the remote control with you
 People or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside. ◀


Trunk lid

 Note the opening height of the trunk lid

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the trunk lid opens; otherwise, damage may result. ◀


Opening from the inside



-  Press the button.
 The trunk lid opens unless it has been locked.

Opening from the outside



- ▷ Press on the top half of the BMW emblem.
- ▷  Press the button on the remote control for approx. one second.

The trunk lid can be opened.

Closing



Recessed grips in the interior trim of the trunk lid make it easier to pull down the lid.



Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the trunk lid is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀

Press the trunk lid down lightly.

It is closed automatically.

Emergency unlocking*



Pull the lever in the cargo area.

The trunk lid unlocks.

Comfort Access*

The concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, e.g., in your jacket pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is nearby or in the passenger compartment.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.
- ▷ Convenient closing.
- ▷ Convenient opening
- ▷ Unlocking of the trunk lid separately.
- ▷ Starting the engine.

Functional requirement

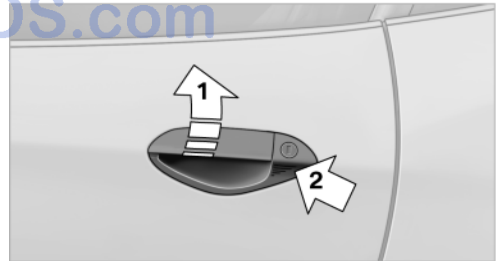
- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle.
- ▷ The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked again for approx. the next two seconds.
- ▷ The engine can only be started if the remote control is inside the vehicle.


Comparison to the standard remote control

The specified functions can be controlled by pressing the button or via Comfort Access.

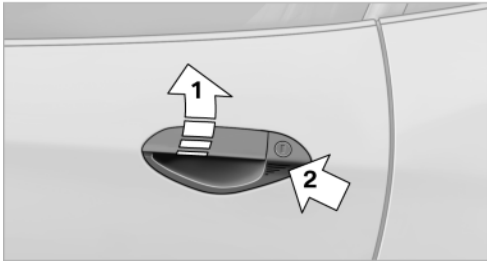
If you notice a brief delay while opening or closing the windows or retractable hardtop, the system is checking whether a remote control is inside the vehicle. Repeat the opening or closing procedure, if necessary.

Unlocking




Pull the handle up, arrow 1. This corresponds to pressing the  button.

Locking



Press on the surface, arrow 2.


This corresponds to pressing the  LOCK button.

To save battery power, ensure that the ignition and all electronic systems and/or power consumers are switched off before locking the vehicle.

Window and convertible top operation

With the ignition in the radio ready state or beyond, the windows and the convertible top can be opened and closed when a remote control is located inside the vehicle.

Unlocking the trunk lid separately

Press on the top half of the BMW emblem. This corresponds to pressing the  button.

If a remote control accidentally left in the trunk is detected in the locked vehicle, then the trunk lid opens again. The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal* sounds.

Switching on the radio ready state

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches on the **radio ready state**, refer to page 50.

Do not depress the brake or the clutch; otherwise, the engine will start.

Starting the engine

The engine can be started or the ignition can be switched on when a remote control is inside the vehicle. It is not necessary to insert a remote control into the **ignition lock**, refer to page 50.

Switching off the engine in cars with automatic transmission

The engine can only be switched off with the selector lever in position P, refer to page 52.

To switch the engine off with the selector lever in position N, insert the remote control in the ignition lock.

Before driving a vehicle with automatic transmission into a car wash

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition switch.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Move the selector lever to position N.
4. Switch the engine off.

The vehicle can roll.

Malfunction

Comfort Access may malfunction due to local radio waves such as from mobile phones.

If this occurs, open or close the vehicle using the buttons on the remote control or use the integrated key in the door lock.

To start the engine afterward, insert the remote control into the ignition switch.

Warning lamps



The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when you attempt to start the engine: the engine cannot be started.

The remote control is not inside the vehicle or is malfunctioning. Take the remote control with you inside the vehicle or have it checked. If necessary, insert another remote control into the ignition switch.



The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up while the engine is running: the remote control is no longer inside the vehicle.

After the engine is switched off, the engine can only be restarted within approx. 10 seconds.

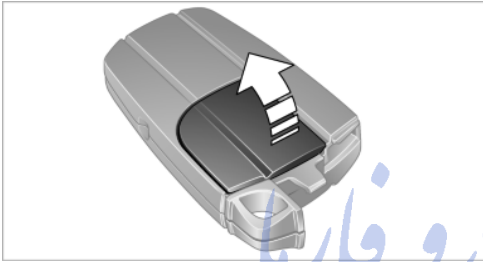


The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on and a message appears on the Control Display: replace the remote control battery.

Replacing the battery

The remote control for Comfort Access contains a battery that will need to be replaced from time to time.

1. Take the integrated key out of the remote control, refer to page 28.



2. Remove the cover.
 3. Insert a battery of the same type with the positive side facing upwards.
 4. Press the cover closed.
- Return used battery to a recycling collection point or to your service center.

Alarm system*

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds to:

- ▷ Opening of a door, the hood or the trunk lid.
- ▷ Movements in the vehicle: **interior motion sensor**, refer to page 37.
- ▷ When the car's inclination changes, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away.
- ▷ Interruptions in battery voltage.

The alarm system signals unauthorized entry attempts for a short time by means of:

- ▷ By sounding an acoustic alarm.

- ▷ Switching on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ By flashing the high beams.

Arming and disarming the alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

Trunk lid and armed alarm system

The trunk lid can be opened using the remote control, even if the alarm system is armed.

Press the button on the remote control for approx. one second.

Note the opening height of the trunk lid. During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the trunk lid opens; otherwise, damage may result. ◀

After the lid is closed, it is locked and monitored again by the alarm system.

Panic mode*

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press the button on the remote control for at least three seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching off the alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle using the remote control, refer to page 30.
- ▷ Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp on the interior rearview mirror



- ▶ The indicator lamp flashes briefly every 2 seconds:
The system is armed.
- ▶ The indicator lamp flashes after locking:
The doors, hood or trunk lid is not closed properly, but the rest of the vehicle is secured.
The indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. The interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active.
- ▶ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:
The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▶ If the indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted in the ignition, but for no longer than approx. 5 minutes:
An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or tow the car.

Interior motion sensor

The interior of the car is monitored up to the height of the seat cushions. Thus the alarm system is activated together with the interior motion sensor even if the hardtop is open. An alarm can be triggered unintentionally by falling objects such as leaves, refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off together, such as in the following situations:

- ▶ In duplex garages
- ▶ During transport on car-carrying trains, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▶ When animals are to remain in the vehicle.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor





LOCK Press the button on the remote control twice in succession.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then flashes continuously.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor remain switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

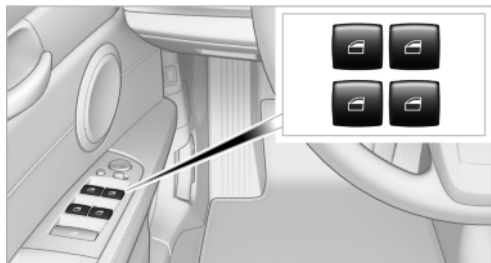
Power windows

General information

-  Take the remote control with you
-  Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot operate the power windows and injure themselves. ◀
-  Danger of pinching
-  Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀

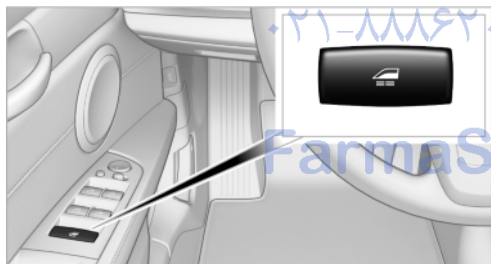
Opening, closing

Individually



- ▶ Press the switch to the resistance point:
The window opens while the switch is held.
Closing can be performed in the same manner by pulling the switch.
- ▶ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
The window opens automatically.
Press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

Jointly



- ▶ Press the switch to the resistance point:
All windows open while the switch is held.
Closing can be performed in the same manner by pulling the switch.
- ▶ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
All windows open automatically.
Press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

Convenience operation

Convenience operation via the **remote control**, refer to page 30, or the **door lock**, refer to page 32.

Convenient closing with **Comfort Access**, refer to page 31.

After the ignition is switched off

When the remote control is removed or the ignition is switched off, the windows can continue to be operated for approx. 1 minute as long as no door is opened.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as one of the front side windows closes, the closing action is interrupted.

The window reopens slightly.



Danger of pinching even with pinch protection

Even with the pinch protection system, check that the window's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not stop in certain situations, e.g., if thin objects are present. ◀



Do not use window accessories

Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows; otherwise, the pinch protection system will be impaired. ◀

Closing without the pinch protection system

For example, if there is an external danger or if ice on the windows prevents a window from closing normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there. Pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

The window closes without pinch protection.

Retractable hardtop

General information

Adhere to the following instructions:

- ▶ It is advisable that you close the retractable hardtop when you park the vehicle. Not only does the closed hardtop protect the vehicle interior against unanticipated weather damage, it also offers theft protection. However, even when the hardtop is closed, valuables should only be stored in the locked cargo area.
- ▶ Do not attach roof rack systems to the retractable hardtop, and in particular do not attach magnetic racks.
- ▶ Do not attach rack systems to the trunk lid, and in particular do not attach magnetic racks.
- ▶ When the retractable hardtop is operated, the trunk lid swings back and up.
Before operating the retractable hardtop, ensure that there is enough clearance, e.g., in tight parking spaces.
- ▶ If you open the hardtop while it is wet, e.g., after driving in the rain, water may drip into the trunk.

If necessary, remove items from the cargo area beforehand to avoid water stains or soiling.

- ▶ At temperatures below 14 °F/-10 °C, the retractable hardtop cannot be moved.

A message appears on the Control Display.

- ⚠ Do not touch the mechanism and keep the opening path clear.

During opening and closing, do not reach into the mechanism and keep children away from the opening path of the retractable hardtop; otherwise, there is the risk of injury. ◀

- ⚠ Only open or close the hardtop while the vehicle is stationary.

Do not drive away until the hardtop movement is completed. Driving when the hardtop is not fully opened or not fully closed may result in damage or injury. ◀

- ⚠ Do not place objects on the retractable hardtop.

Do not place any objects on the retractable hardtop or on the trunk lid; otherwise, they could fall during movements of the retractable hardtop and cause damage or injury. ◀

Before opening and closing

- ⚠ Always open or close the hardtop fully. Do not let the hardtop stop in an intermediate position when opening or closing. Otherwise, there is the danger of personal injury since the hardtop will be lowered automatically after a few minutes. ◀

- ▶ Observe the safety precautions above.
- ▶ Ensure that the trunk lid is closed.
- ▶ The vehicle should be parked on fairly level ground. Excessive angle is indicated by a lamp.
- ▶ Fold down the trunk cover and make sure it engages, refer to the instructions below.
- ▶ Do not place any objects next to or on the cargo area partition and close the storage compartment on the left side of the cargo area. تلفن شبانه روز
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum loading height under the cargo area partition; refer to the label in the cargo area showing a line indicating the maximum height.

Folding down the cargo area partition

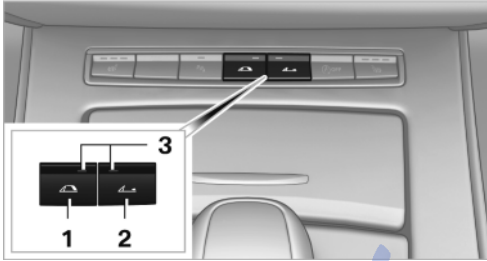


Before opening the hardtop, close the cargo area partition, arrow, and make sure it engages on both sides.

Opening and closing

In the radio ready state or beyond, refer to page 50, and when the vehicle is stationary:

If possible, conserve the battery by only operating the retractable hardtop when the engine is running. Before closing the retractable hardtop, remove all foreign objects from the windshield frame as these could prevent the hardtop from closing properly.



- 1 Press and hold button 1:
The retractable hardtop closes.
- 2 Press and hold button 2:
The retractable hardtop opens.

3 LEDs

The side windows move down when the hardtop is opened or closed.

If the windows pause briefly as they move, this is for technical reasons and is not a malfunction.

LEDs

In the following situations, a message appears on the Control Display or an acoustic signal sounds in addition to the LED lighting up:

- ▶ While the hardtop is being operated, the green LED lights up. It goes out as soon as the top is fully opened or closed.
- ▶ If the red LED flashes when you release the switch, the opening or closing action has not yet finished.
- ▶ If the red LED lights up when the switch is pressed, the cargo area partition is folded up, the trunk lid is not closed, the vehicle is standing on a strong incline or there is a malfunction. The retractable hardtop cannot be moved.

Interruption

The automatic sequence of movements is interrupted if the switch for hardtop operation is released. The sequence can be continued in the desired direction by pushing or pulling the switch.



Always open or close the hardtop fully.

Open or close the hardtop fully; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage when driving. Do not interrupt and resume the closing procedure several times in close succession as this could damage the mechanism. ◀

If the hardtop is not fully opened or closed, the trunk lid cannot be opened and the windows cannot be moved.

Convenience operation with remote control or via door lock

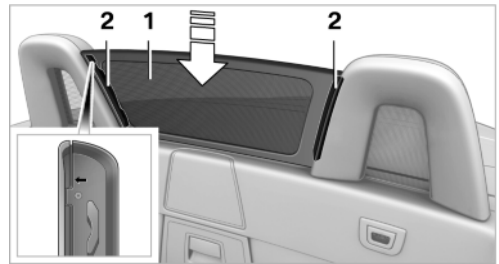
Information on convenience operation, refer to page 30, and on operation using the door lock, refer to page 32.

Wind deflector*

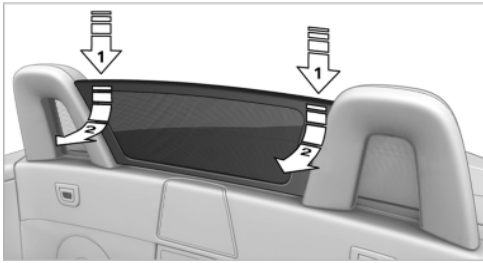
The wind deflector keeps air movements in the passenger compartment to a minimum when the hardtop is open and provides an even more comfortable ride, particularly at high speeds.

Installation

1. Insert the wind deflector 1 into the holders 2 on the rollover bars; the arrow should point in the direction of travel.



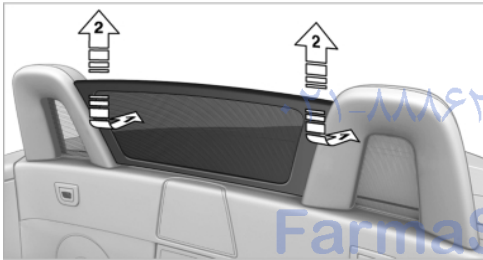
2. Push the wind deflector down, arrow 1, and then push down and forward simultaneously, arrow 2, until it engages.



- ⚠** Attach the wind deflector securely
The wind deflector must engage firmly; otherwise, it could become detached at higher vehicle speeds. ◀

Removing

1. Push the wind deflector down and back simultaneously, arrow 1, to disengage it from the catch mechanism.



2. Pull the wind deflector upward out of the holders, arrow 2.

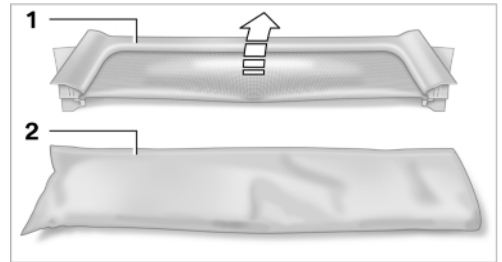
Clothes hooks



Coat hooks 1 are located on the wind deflector panels in the rollover bars.

- ⚠** Only hang light objects on the hooks
Do not hang heavy objects on the hooks; otherwise, they could endanger the passengers, such as during braking or evasive maneuvers. ◀

Storage



Fold the wind deflector 1 and slide it into the storage pouch 2.

The wind deflector can be stored on the lateral storage shelf behind the seats.

Adjusting

Sitting safely

The ideal seating position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

The seating position plays an important role in an accident in combination with:

- ▷ Safety belts, refer to page 44.
- ▷ Head restraints.
- ▷ Airbags, refer to page 80.

Seats

Note before adjusting



Do not adjust the seat while driving

Never attempt to adjust the driver's seat while driving.

The seat could respond with unexpected movement and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident. ◀

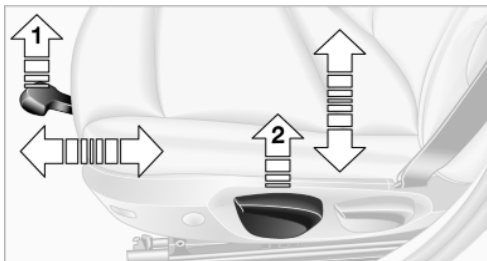


Do not incline the backrest too far to the rear

Do not incline the backrest on the front passenger side too far to the rear during driving. Otherwise, there is the danger of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. This would eliminate the protection normally provided by the belt. ◀

Also note the information on [safety belt damage](#), refer to page 44.

Adjusting manually



Forward/backward

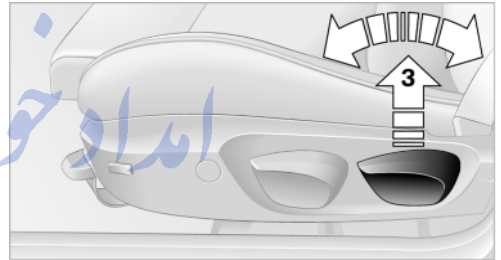
Pull lever 1 and slide the seat to the desired position.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly to make sure it engages properly.

Height

Pull lever 2 and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Backrest tilt



Pull lever 3 and move the backrest to the desired tilt.

Distance:

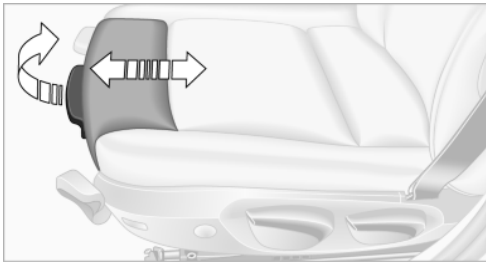
Adjust the backrest so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Seat tilt*



Pull the lever and move the seat to the desired tilt. After releasing the lever, apply your weight to the seat or lift it off to make sure the seat engages properly.

Thigh support*

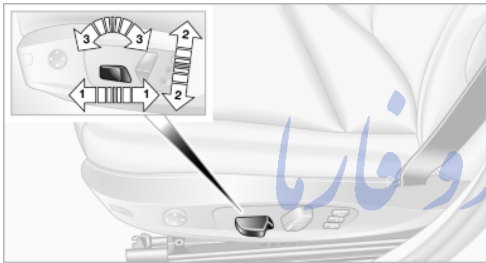


Pull the lever and move the thigh support forward or back.



- ▶ Press the front/rear section of the switch. The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▶ Press the upper/lower section of the switch. The curvature is shifted up/down.

Adjusting electrically



- 1 Forward/backward
- 2 Height
- 3 Seat tilt



- 4 Backrest tilt

Lumbar support*

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in such a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine.

The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Backrest width*

Change the width of the backrest using the side wings to adjust the lateral support.



Press the front/rear section of the switch. The backrest width decreases/increases.

Seat heating*



- ▶ Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Switching off

Press the button longer.
The LEDs go out.

Safety belts

General information


Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving away.


Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

Seats with safety belt


The vehicle has two seats, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

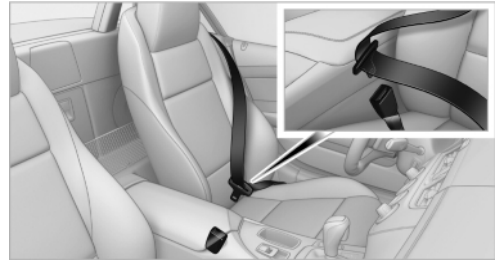
 One person per safety belt
Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride on a passenger's lap. ◀

 Putting on the belt
Lay the belt, without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. Otherwise, the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen.

The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects, or be pinched. ◀

 Reduction of restraining effect
Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly, and pull the shoulder belt periodically to readjust the tension across your lap; otherwise, the retention effect of the safety belt may be reduced. ◀

Buckling the belt



Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Unbuckling the belt

1. Hold the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt back into its reel.

Safety belt reminder for driver and passenger*




The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display. Check whether the safety belt has been fastened correctly. تلفن ۰۸۸۶۲۰۸۵-۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Damage to safety belts

In the case of strain caused by accidents or damage:

Have the safety belts, including the safety belt tensioners, replaced and have the belt anchors checked.

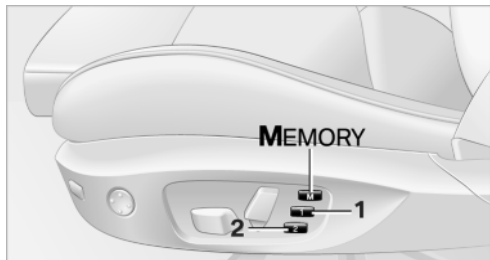
 Checking and replacing safety belts
Have the work performed only by your service center; otherwise, it cannot be ensured that this safety feature will function properly. ◀

Seat and mirror memory*


General information

Two different driver's seat and exterior mirror positions can be stored and retrieved for each remote control.


Settings for the backrest width and lumbar support are not stored.




Storing

1. Switch on the radio ready state or the ignition, refer to page 50.
2. Adjust the seat and exterior mirrors to the desired positions.
3.  Press the button. The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button 1 or 2: the LED goes out.

If the M button is pressed accidentally:

-  Press the button again. The LED goes out.

Calling up settings

 Do not retrieve the memory setting while driving

Do not retrieve the memory setting while driving, as an unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel could result in an accident. ◀

Comfort function

1. Open the driver's door or switch on the radio ready state, refer to page 50.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button 1 or 2.


The seat is automatically moved to the stored position.

The procedure stops when a switch for adjusting the seat or one of the buttons is pressed.

Safety mode

1. Close the driver's door and switch the ignition on or off, refer to page 50.
2. Press and hold the desired button 1 or 2 until the adjustment procedure is completed.

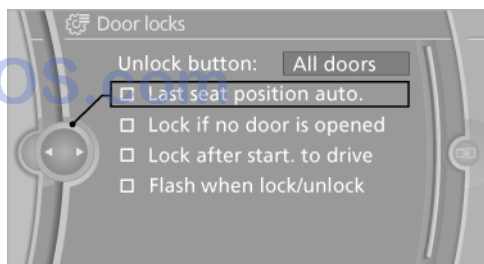
Calling up with the remote control

 Keep the footwell behind the driver's seat clear

When this Personal Profile function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is free of obstacles. Failure to do so could result in damage to the objects if the seat were to move rearward. ◀

The setting procedure stops when a switch for adjusting the seat or one of the buttons is pressed.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Last seat position auto."



Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's mirror.

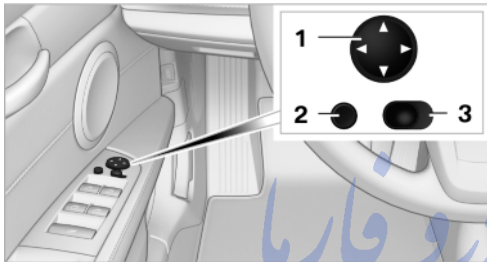


Estimating distances correctly

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the traffic behind you based on what you see in the mirror, as this will increase your risk of an accident. ◀

The setting for the exterior mirrors is stored for the remote control* currently in use. The stored position is called up automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

At a glance



- 1 Adjusting
- 2 Fold in and out*
- 3 Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor*

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide over the mirror changeover switch 3.

Adjusting electrically



The setting corresponds to the direction in which the button is pressed.

Saving positions*

Seat and mirror memory*, refer to page 45.

Adjusting manually

If an electrical malfunction occurs, for example, press the edges of the mirror glass.

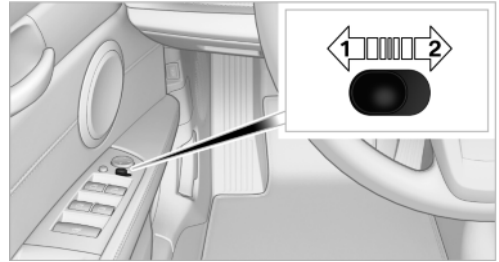
Automatic Curb Monitor*

When the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass tilts downward slightly on the front passenger side. This improves your view of the curb

and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for example.

Activating

1. Slide the mirror changeover switch to the driver's side mirror position, arrow 1.



2. Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position R.

Deactivating

Slide the mirror changeover switch to the passenger side mirror position, arrow 2.

Fold in and out*

Press button 2.

Possible up to approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

For example, this is advantageous

- ▶ In car washes.
- ▶ In narrow streets.
- ▶ For folding back mirrors that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.



Fold in the mirror in a car wash

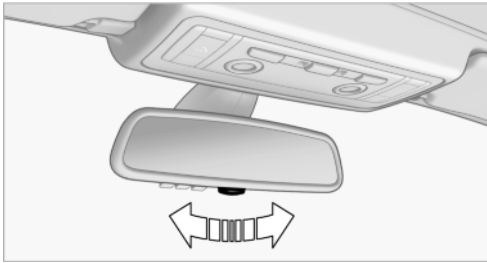
Before entering an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors by hand or with the button; otherwise, they could be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle. ◀

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are heated automatically while the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

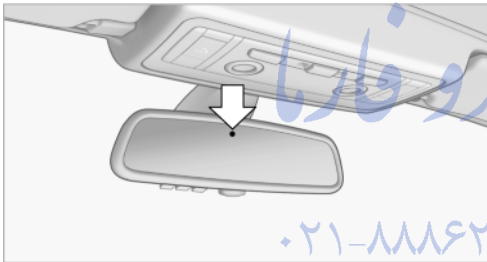
Interior rearview mirror

Reducing the blinding effect



Blinding effect from behind when driving at night: turn the knob.

Interior rearview and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature*




The automatic dimming feature of the interior rearview and exterior mirrors* is controlled by two photo cells in the interior rearview mirror. One photo cell is in the mirror frame, see arrow; the other is on the back of the mirror.

For proper operation:

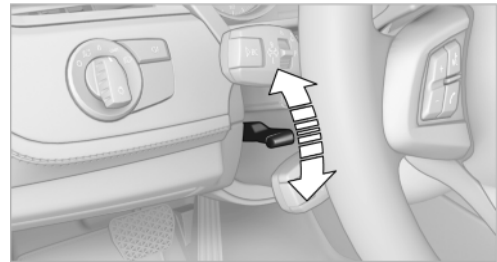
- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

Steering wheel


General information

-  Do not adjust while driving
- Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving; otherwise, an unexpected movement could result in an accident. ◀

Adjusting



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
3. Fold the lever back.

-  Do not use force to swing the lever back. Do not use force to swing the lever back up; otherwise, the mechanism will be damaged. ◀

Steering wheel heating*

Switching on/off



Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Note



Children in the vehicle

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g., by opening the doors. ◀

Children on the front passenger seat

Should it ever be necessary to use a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. [Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 81.](#)



Deactivating the front passenger airbags

If a child restraint fixing system is used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbags must be deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint fixing system. ◀



Transport children in suitable child restraint fixing systems

Only transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm in child restraint fixing systems suitable for the age, weight and size of the child; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint fixing system can no longer be used, due to their age, weight and size. ◀

Installing child restraint fixing systems

Notes



Manufacturer's information for child restraint fixing systems

To select, mount and use child restraint fixing systems, observe the information provided by the system manufacturer; otherwise, the protective effect can be impaired. ◀

Standard child restraint systems are designed to be secured with a lap belt or with the lap-belt section of a lap-and-shoulder belt. Incorrectly or improperly installed child restraint systems can increase the risk of injury to children. Always follow the installation instructions for the system with the greatest care.

In the front passenger seat



Check the deactivation of the passenger airbag

After installing a child restraint fixing system on the passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the passenger side have been deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury when the airbags are deployed. ◀

Seat position

Before installing a child restraint fixing system, move the passenger seat as far back and as high* as possible to obtain the best possible position for the belt.

Backrest width*

1. [Adjust the backrest width to its widest setting, refer to page 43.](#)
2. Install the child seat.



Backrest width for the child seat

Before installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, the backrest width must be opened completely. Do not change the adjustment after this; otherwise, the stability of the child seat will be reduced. ◀

Child seat security



The safety belt for the passenger can be locked to prevent it from being pulled out when it is used to secure child restraint systems.

To lock the safety belt

1. Secure the child restraint fixing system with the belt.
2. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in and pull it taut against the child restraint fixing system.

The safety belt is locked.

To unlock the safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle. تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
2. Remove the child restraint fixing system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in completely.

FarmaSOS.com

Upper LATCH retaining strap

For Canadian Customers only

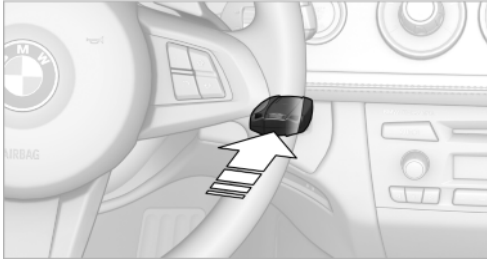
The following statement is required by Transport Canada

This vehicle is not equipped with user-ready tether anchorages. As such neither a child restraint system, nor a booster cushion, requiring the use of a tether strap can be properly secured in the vehicle.

Driving

Ignition lock

Insert the remote control into the ignition lock



Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

- ▶ Radio ready state is switched on. Individual electrical consumers can operate.

Comfort Access*

If the car is equipped with Comfort Access, only insert the remote control into the **ignition lock**, refer to page 34, under special circumstances.

Removing the remote control from the ignition lock



Do not forcibly pull the remote control out of the ignition lock

Do not forcibly pull the remote control out of the ignition lock as this may cause damage. ◀

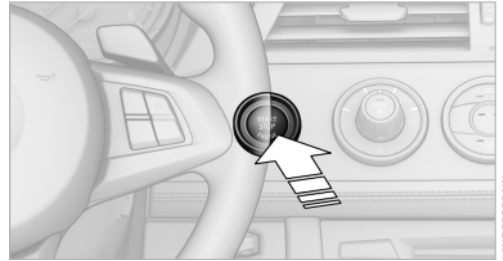
Before removing the remote control, push it all the way in to release the locking mechanism.

- ▶ The ignition is switched off if it was on.

Automatic transmission

You can only take out the remote control if the selector lever is in position P: interlock.

Start/Stop button



Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the radio ready state or the ignition on and off.

The engine starts when you press the Start/Stop button and, if the car has manual transmission, also depress the clutch, or, if the car has automatic transmission, also depress the brake.

Radio ready state

Individual electrical consumers can operate. The time and the outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio ready state is switched off automatically:

- ▶ When the remote control is removed from the ignition lock.
- ▶ In cars with Comfort Access*, by touching the surface above the door lock, **locking**, refer to page 35.

Ignition on

All electrical consumers can operate. The odometer and trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Radio ready state and ignition off

All indicator and warning lamps as well as displays in the instrument cluster go out.

Starting the engine



Enclosed areas

Do not let the engine run in enclosed areas; otherwise, breathing of exhaust fumes may lead to loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. ◀



Unattended vehicle

Do not leave the car unattended with the engine running; otherwise, it presents a potential source of danger.

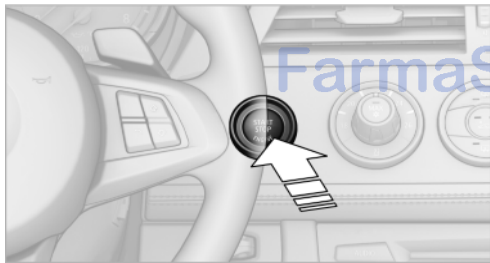
Before leaving the car with the engine running, set the parking brake and move the selector lever to position P or shift into neutral; otherwise, the vehicle may begin to roll. ◀



Frequent starting in quick succession

Avoid repeated futile attempts at starting the car and avoid starting the car frequently in quick succession. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned, and there is the danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter. ◀

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.



Manual transmission

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with **Comfort Access**, inside the vehicle, refer to page 34.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press on the clutch and shift to neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The starter operates automatically for a certain time, and stops automatically as soon as the engine has started.

Automatic transmission

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with **Comfort Access**, inside the vehicle, refer to page 34.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Move the selector lever to position P.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The starter operates automatically for a certain time, and stops automatically as soon as the engine has started.

7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with **Comfort Access**, inside the vehicle, refer to page 34.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The engine starts, regardless of the current selector lever position.

Engine stop



Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot operate the windows and injure themselves. ◀



Set the parking brake and further secure the vehicle as required

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the vehicle, for example, by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb. ◀

Manual transmission

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.

- Shift into first gear or reverse.
- Set the parking brake.
- Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 50.

Automatic transmission

- With the car at a standstill, move the selector lever to position P.
- Press the Start/Stop button.
- Set the parking brake.
- Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 50.

7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch

- Engage transmission position P with the vehicle stopped.
- Press the Start/Stop button.
- Set the parking brake.
- Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 50.

Parking brake

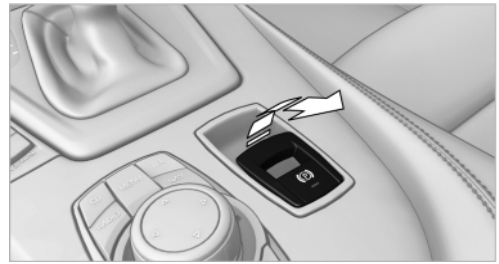
The concept

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake that can be set and released by using a button.

The parking brake is primarily used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

When the vehicle is stationary, the parking brake acts on the rear wheels via an electromechanical mechanism. When the vehicle is rolling or being driven, the parking brake acts on the disc brakes of the front and rear wheels via the hydraulic brake system.

Setting



Pull the button. The parking brake is set.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster and the LED on the button light up red. The parking brake is set.

(P) Indicator lamp in Canadian models.

To set the parking brake, the remote control does not need to be in the ignition lock.

While driving

If exceptional circumstances should make it necessary to engage the parking brake while the vehicle is in motion, pull the button for an extended period: the vehicle brakes forcefully while the button is being pulled.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up red, a sound is issued and the brake lights light up.

(P) Indicator lamp in Canadian models.

When the vehicle is braked almost to a halt, approx. 2 mph/3 km/h, the parking brake remains set.

Releasing



Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot release the parking brake. ◀

The parking brake can only be released while the ignition is switched on or the engine is running.



WVC090903MM

With manual transmission

Press the button of the parking brake. Depress the brake and clutch pedals while doing so.

With automatic transmission or 7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch

Press the parking brake button while the brake is depressed or transmission position P is engaged.

Indicator lamps



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

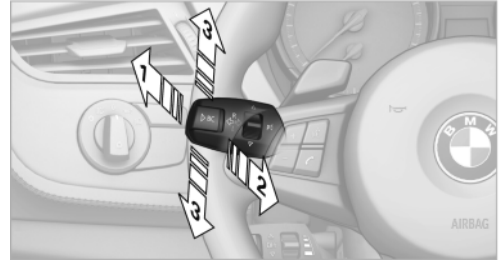


Indicator lamp in Canadian models.

Malfunction

In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling using a wheel chock, for example, if you leave the vehicle.

Turn signals/ headlamp flasher



VWV02001LV

- 1 High beams
- 2 Headlamp flasher
- 3 Turn signal

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To switch off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.


Indicating a turn briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

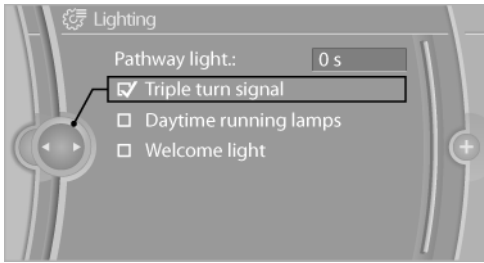
Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point. The turn signal flash once.

You can be set whether the turn signal should flash once or three times when activated.

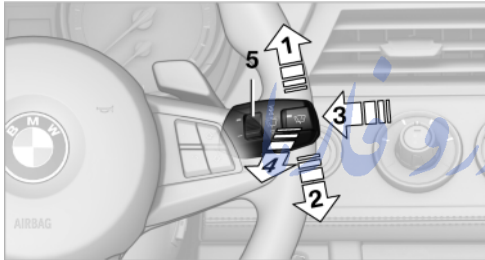
1.  Press the button.
2. "Settings"
3. "Lighting"

4. "Triple turn signal"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Washer/wiper system



- 1 Switching on wipers
- 2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe
- 3 Activating/deactivating intermittent wipe or the rain sensor*
- 4 Cleaning the windshield and headlamps
- 5 Setting speed for intermittent wipe or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Switching on wipers

Press the lever upward, arrow 1.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.

The system switches to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.

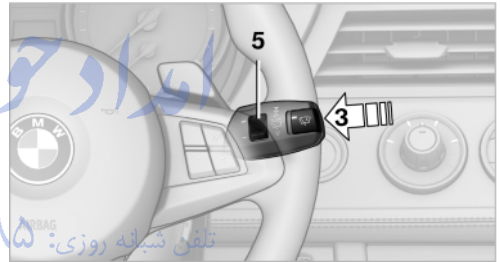
The system switches to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Intermittent wipe or rain sensor*

If the car is not equipped with a rain sensor, the intermittent-wipe time is a preset.

If the car is equipped with a rain sensor, the time between wipes is controlled automatically and depends on the intensity of the rainfall. The rain sensor is mounted on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating intermittent wipe or rain sensor



Press the button, arrow 3. The LED in the button lights up.

Setting speed for intermittent wipe or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn thumbwheel 5 up or down.

Deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow 3.

The LED goes out.




Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes
Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash; otherwise, damage could be caused by undesired wiper activation. ◀

Cleaning the windshield and headlamps*

Pull the lever, arrow 4.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

When the vehicle lighting system is switched on, the headlamps are cleaned at regular and appropriate intervals.

 Do not use the washer system at freezing temperatures

Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield; otherwise, your vision could be obscured. For this reason, use antifreeze.


Avoid using the washer when the reservoir is empty; otherwise, you could damage the pump. ◀

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are heated automatically while the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Washer fluid


General information

 Antifreeze for washer fluid
Antifreeze is flammable. Therefore, keep it away from sources of ignition.

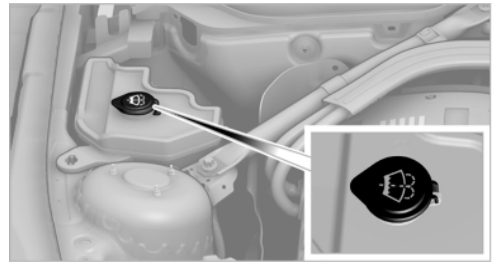
Only keep it in the closed original container and inaccessible to children.

Follow the instructions on the container. ◀

Washer fluid reservoir

 Adding washer fluid
Only add washer fluid when the engine is cool, and then close the cover completely to avoid contact between the washer fluid and hot engine parts.

Otherwise, there is the danger of fire and a risk to personal safety if the fluid is spilled. ◀



All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.


Mix the washer fluid before adding to maintain the correct mixing ratio.

Capacity

Approx. 6.3 US quarts/6 liters.

Manual transmission



 Pay attention to the shift plane
When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, push the gearshift lever to the right; otherwise inadvertent shifting into the 3rd or 4th gear could lead to engine damage. ◀

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. When the gearshift lever is pressed to the left, a slight resistance needs to be overcome.

Automatic transmission with Steptronic*

In addition to the fully automatic mode, you can also shift gears manually using Steptronic, refer to page 57.

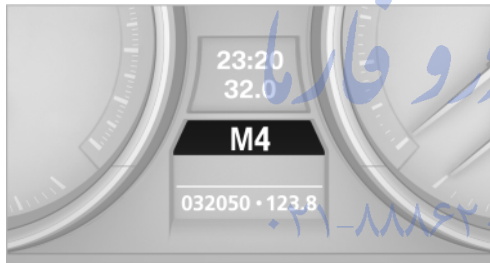
Disengaging the remote control

To remove the remote control from the ignition lock, first move the selector lever to position P and switch off the engine: interlock. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 50.

Selector lever positions

P R N D M/S +-

Displays in the instrument cluster



P R N D DS M1 to M6

The selector lever position is displayed, or the current gear in the manual mode.

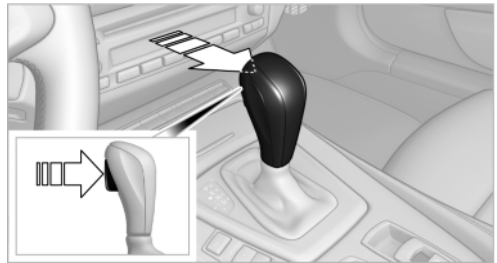
Changing selector lever positions

- ▷ With the ignition switched on or the engine running, the selector lever can be moved out of position P
- ▷ When the vehicle is stationary, step on the brake before shifting out of P or N; otherwise, the selector lever is locked: shiftlock.



Press on the brake pedal until you start driving

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start. ◀



A lock prevents you from inadvertently engaging selector lever positions R and P. To cancel the lock, press the button on the front of the selector lever, see arrow.

P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The rear wheels are locked.

R is Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N is Neutral

Use in automatic car washes, for example. The vehicle can roll.

D Drive, automatic position

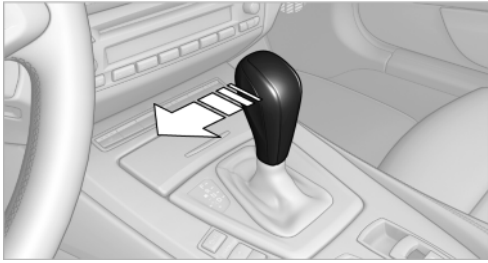
Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are selected automatically.

Under normal operating conditions, fuel consumption is lowest when you are driving in position D.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Press the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle resistance point.

Sport program and manual mode M/S



Move selector lever from position D toward the left into the M/S shifting slot:

The sport program is activated and DS is displayed in the instrument cluster. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

To deactivate the sport program or manual mode M/S, move the selector lever to the right into position D.

Shifting gears via the selector lever

When you press the selector lever forwards or backwards, the manual mode is activated and Steptronic changes gear. The instrument panel shows M1 through M6.

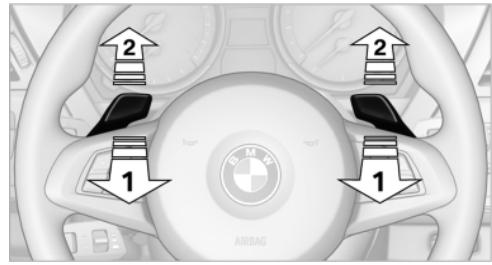
The vehicle only shifts up or down at appropriate engine and road speeds, e.g., it does not shift down if the engine speed is too high. The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument panel, followed by the current gear.

Shifting gears using the shift paddles* on the steering wheel

The shift paddles allow you to shift gears without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

- ▶ When the shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to shift gears while in automatic mode, the transmission switches to manual mode.
- ▶ If the shift paddles are not used to accelerate or shift gears for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

If the selector lever is in the M/S gear plane, manual mode remains active.



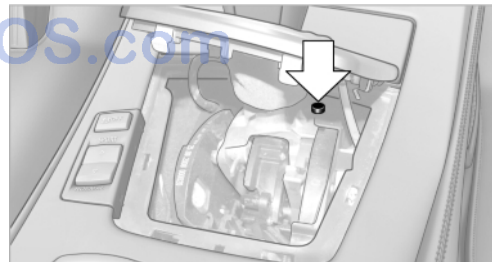
- ▶ To shift up: press one of the shift paddles back, arrow 1.
- ▶ To shift down: press one of the shift paddles forward, arrow 2.

The vehicle only shifts up or down at appropriate engine and road speeds, e.g., it does not shift down if the engine speed is too high. The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument panel, followed by the current gear.

Overriding selector lever lock

Should the selector lever refuse to move out of position P although the button on the selector lever is pressed, the selector lever lock can be overridden:

1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve up over the selector lever until the sleeve is inside out.



3. Using the screwdriver from the **onboard vehicle tool kit**, refer to [page 204](#), press the red lever while moving the selector lever to the desired position.

7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch*

The concept

This transmission is an automated manual transmission with two clutches and two gearbox components in which the gears are changed without loss of torque.

The transmission is operated using the selector lever and two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

Functions:

- ▶ Choice of manual or automatic operation: manual mode or drive mode.
- ▶ Automatic downshifting and protection against selecting the wrong gear, even in manual mode.
- ▶ Acceleration assistant, Launch Control, refer to page 60.
- ▶ Automatic throttle blip.

System limits

This transmission is equipped with an overheating protection system that protects the clutches against extremely high loads.



The indicator lamp lights up yellow if the transmission becomes too warm. Avoid high engine loads and driving off

frequently.

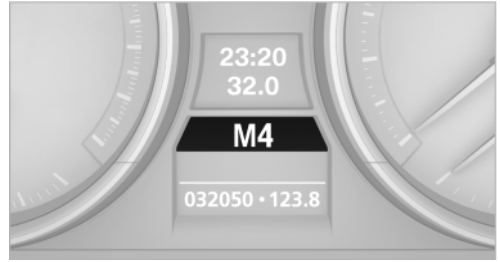
If the transmission overheats, the indicator lamp lights up red and power flow to the engine is interrupted. You can only continue driving after the transmission has cooled down.

Avoid driving off frequently with high acceleration and do not hold the vehicle on inclines by depressing the accelerator lightly; otherwise, the transmission may overheat.

Transmission positions

P R N D M/S + -

Displays in the instrument cluster



P, R, N, D1 to D7, S1 to S7, M1 to M7

The transmission position and the gear currently engaged are displayed.

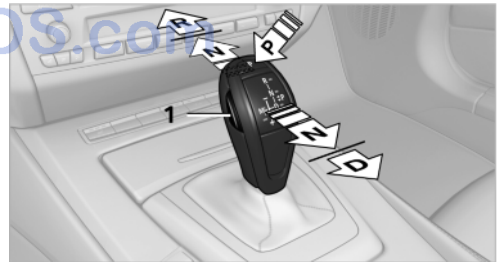
Engaging transmission positions N, D, R

- ▶ Transmission position P can only be disengaged if the engine is running.
- ▶ Before moving the lever away from P or N with the vehicle stationary, depress the brake; otherwise, the transmission will not shift.



Press on the brake pedal until you start driving

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start. ◀



Briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, beyond a resistance point if necessary. When shifting out of P or into R, press button 1 at the same time.

The engaged transmission position is also displayed on the selector lever.

When you release the selector lever, it returns to its center position.

N Neutral

The vehicle can roll.

N remains engaged after the engine is switched off if the remote control remains in the ignition lock. This function can be used in an automatic car wash, for example. P is automatically engaged after approx. 30 minutes.

D drive mode

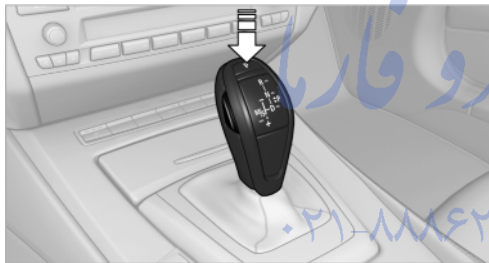
In drive mode, all forward gears are shifted automatically.

R is Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

Engaging transmission position P

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

P Park

The rear wheels are locked.

P is engaged automatically when the following conditions are met:

- ▶ The driver's door is opened while the engine is running, the safety belt is not fastened and neither the brake pedal nor the accelerator is activated.
- ▶ The engine is switched off unless N is engaged and the remote control is in the ignition lock.
- ▶ **The remote control is removed from the ignition lock, refer to page 50.**

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Press the accelerator past the resistance point.

Sport program and manual mode M/S



Move the selector lever from position D toward the left:

The Sport program is activated.

Sport program

S1 through S7 is displayed in the instrument cluster. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

Manual mode

When you press the selector lever forward or backward, or when you press the shift paddles, manual mode is activated and the gear is changed.

M1 through M7 are displayed in the instrument cluster.

The transmission provides assistance in the following situations:

- ▶ Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system.
- ▶ When the vehicle stops, the transmission automatically shifts down to first gear.
- ▶ Shortly before the vehicle slows down to below the minimum speed of the gear currently engaged, the transmission automatically

shifts down without requiring your intervention.

Shifting down rapidly: even in manual mode, you can skip several gears to achieve optimal acceleration. Do so by pressing the accelerator past the resistance point.

Changing to drive mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

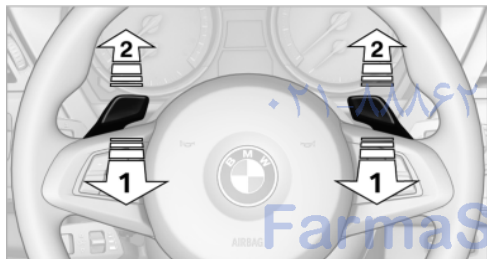
Shifting gears via the selector lever

In manual mode:

- ▷ To shift up, pull back the selector lever.
- ▷ To shift down, push it forward.

Shifting gears using the shift paddles* on the steering wheel

The shift paddles allow you to shift gears without taking your hands off the steering wheel. You do not need to raise your foot from the accelerator when doing so.



- ▷ To shift up: press one of the shift paddles back, arrow 1.
- ▷ To shift down: press one of the shift paddles forward, arrow 2.

Gears can be shifted using the shift paddles in drive mode or in manual mode.

Gear change in manual mode

When **manual mode is active**, refer to page 59, gears can be changed using the shift paddles or the selector lever.

Gear change in drive mode

The shift paddles can be used to change gears in drive mode as well.

Afterwards, if the shift paddles are not used for some time and vehicle acceleration is insufficient, the forward gears are changed again automatically.

Launch Control

Launch Control enables you to drive off with an optimal vehicle acceleration on a high grip road surface.



Do not use Launch Control too often

Do not use Launch Control too often, as the higher loads on the vehicle lead to premature component wear. ◀

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature, i.e., after driving continuously for at least 6 miles/10 km.

1. With the engine running, depress the brake pedal with your left foot.
2. Activate the **SPORT+** program of the Dynamic Driving Control, refer to page 88.
3. With the vehicle stationary, activate manual mode and select first gear.
4. Press the accelerator all the way down. The engine speed when driving off is controlled. A flag symbol appears in the instrument cluster.
5. The vehicle accelerates when you release the brake pedal. Keep the accelerator pressed all the way down.
6. The transmission shifts up automatically as long as the accelerator is pressed all the way down.

Launch Control only becomes available again after a certain distance has been driven.

Launch Control can only be used after the break-in phase, refer to page 112.

To maintain driving stability, activate DSC whenever possible.

Manually releasing and engaging the transmission lock

If a power failure occurs, e.g., if the battery is discharged or disconnected, the transmission lock must be released manually, otherwise the

rear wheels are blocked and the vehicle cannot be towed.

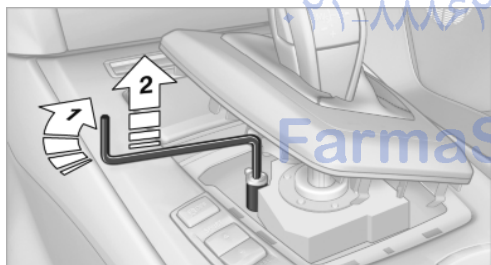
Release the transmission lock manually for towing only and set the parking brake beforehand to prevent the vehicle from rolling. After parking the vehicle, **engage the transmission lock again manually**, refer to page 61.

Manual release


1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve up over the selector lever until the sleeve is inside out.



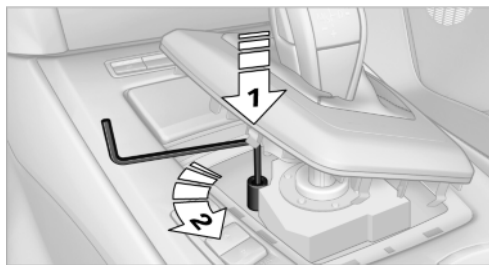
3. Insert the Allen wrench from the **onboard vehicle tool kit**, refer to page 204, into the cap.




4. Turn the cap with the Allen wrench, arrow 1, and remove it, arrow 2.
5. Insert the Allen wrench into the opening, arrow 1.

 Turn the Allen wrench in the correct direction.

Do not turn the Allen wrench in the opposite direction as this may damage the mechanism. ◀

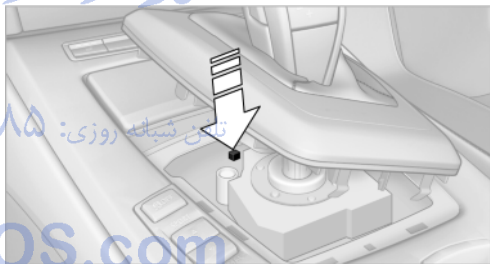


6. Turn the Allen wrench as far as it will go, arrow 2. The transmission lock is released.
7. Draw the Allen wrench out of the opening.

 Locking the transmission lock again
After parking the vehicle, lock the transmission lock again to prevent the vehicle from rolling. ◀

Locking manually

1. Press the button, see arrow. The transmission lock is locked again.

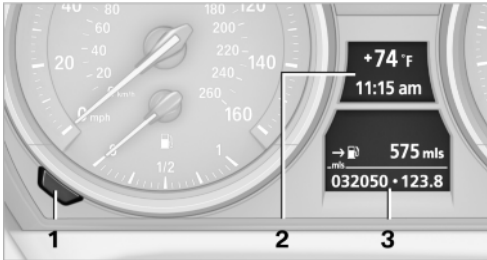


2. Clip the sleeve of the selector lever back in place.
3. Set the parking brake.

Jump-starting, refer to page 210, **towing**, refer to page 211.

Displays

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock



- 1 Knob in the instrument cluster
- 2 Outside temperature display and clock
- 3 Odometer and trip odometer

Knob in the instrument cluster

- ▷ To reset the trip odometer while the ignition is switched on.
- ▷ To display the time, external temperature and odometer briefly while the ignition is switched off.

Units of measure

To set the respective units of measure, miles or km for the odometer and °C or °F for the external temperature, refer to page 66.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Time, outside temperature display

Set the time, refer to page 66.

External temperature warning

If the display drops to 37 °F/3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. There is the increased danger of ice.



Ice on roads

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C, there can be a risk of ice on roads.

Therefore, drive carefully on bridges and shady roads, for example, to avoid the increased danger of an accident. ◀

Odometer and trip odometer

Resetting trip odometer:

With the ignition switched on, press button 1 in the instrument cluster.

When the vehicle is parked

If you still want to view the time, outside temperature and odometer reading briefly after the remote control has been taken out of the ignition lock:

Press button 1 in the instrument cluster.

Tachometer



Never force the engine speed up into the red warning field, see arrow. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Coolant temperature

A warning lamp will come on if the coolant, and therefore the engine, becomes too hot. In addition, a message will appear on the Control Display.

Check the coolant level, refer to page 200.

Engine oil temperature*



- ▶ Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- ▶ Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle of the temperature display.
- ▶ Hot engine: the pointer is at the high temperature end. Switch off the engine immediately and allow it to cool down.

If the engine oil temperature is too high, a message appears on the Control Display.

Check the oil level, refer to page 198.

Fuel gauge



Fuel capacity: approx. 14.5 US gallons/55 liters.

The vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Notes on refueling, refer to page 186.

Reserve

After the reserve range is reached:

- ▶ A message is briefly displayed on the Control Display.
- ▶ The remaining range is shown on the computer.

Below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km, the message is displayed continuously.



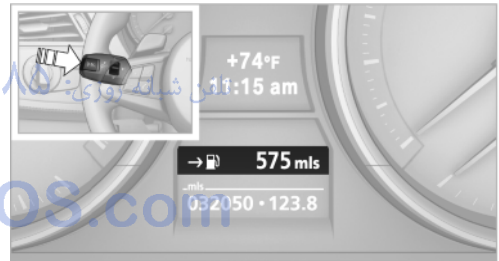
Refuel below 30 miles/50 km

Refuel below a range of 30 miles/50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage may occur. ◀

Computer

Displays in the instrument cluster

Calling up information



Press the button in the turn indicator lever.

The following items of information are displayed in the order listed:

- ▶ Range.
- ▶ Average speed.
- ▶ Average fuel consumption.
- ▶ Current fuel consumption*
- ▶ No information.

To set the corresponding units of measure, **units of measure**, refer to page 66.

Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is calculated based on your driving style over the last 18 miles/30 km and the current fuel supply.



Refuel below 30 miles/50 km

Refuel below a range of 30 miles/50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage may occur. ◀

Average speed

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

With the [trip computer](#), refer to page 64, you can have the average speed displayed for an additional distance.

To reset the average speed: press the button on the turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

With the [trip computer](#), refer to page 64, you can have the average consumption displayed for an additional distance.

To reset the average consumption: press the button on the turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Current fuel consumption

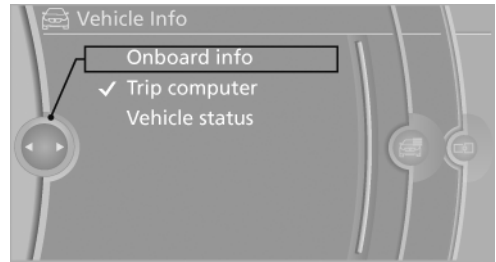
Displays the current fuel consumption. This allows you to see whether your current driving style is conducive to fuel economy with minimum exhaust emissions.

Displays on the Control Display

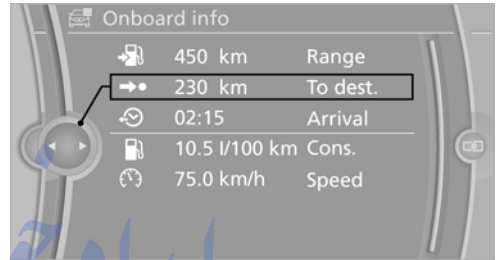
The computer can also be opened via iDrive.

1. "Vehicle Info"

2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

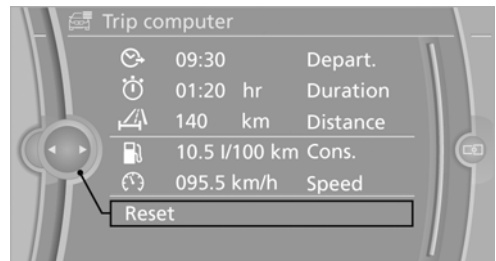


Displays on the "Onboard info":



- ▶ Range.
- ▶ Distance to destination
- ▶ Estimated time of arrival if:
 - ▶ A distance was manually entered into the computer, refer to information below.
 - ▶ A destination was entered in the navigation system*, refer to page 121.

Displays on the "Trip computer":



- ▶ Departure time.
- ▶ Trip duration.
- ▶ Trip distance.

Both displays show:

- ▶ The average speed and

- ▷ The average fuel consumption.

Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

You can reset the values for average speed and average consumption:

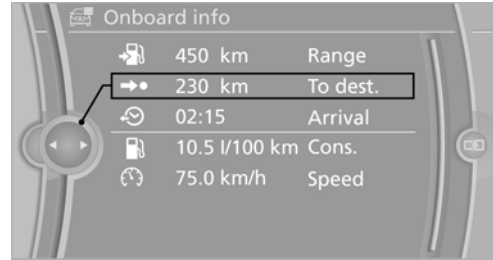
1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. Press the controller again to confirm your selection.

Resetting the trip computer

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. Select
 - ▷ "Reset" All values are reset.
 - ▷ "Automatically reset" All values are reset after the engine has been switched off for approx. 4 hours.

Entering a distance manually

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info"
3. "To dest."



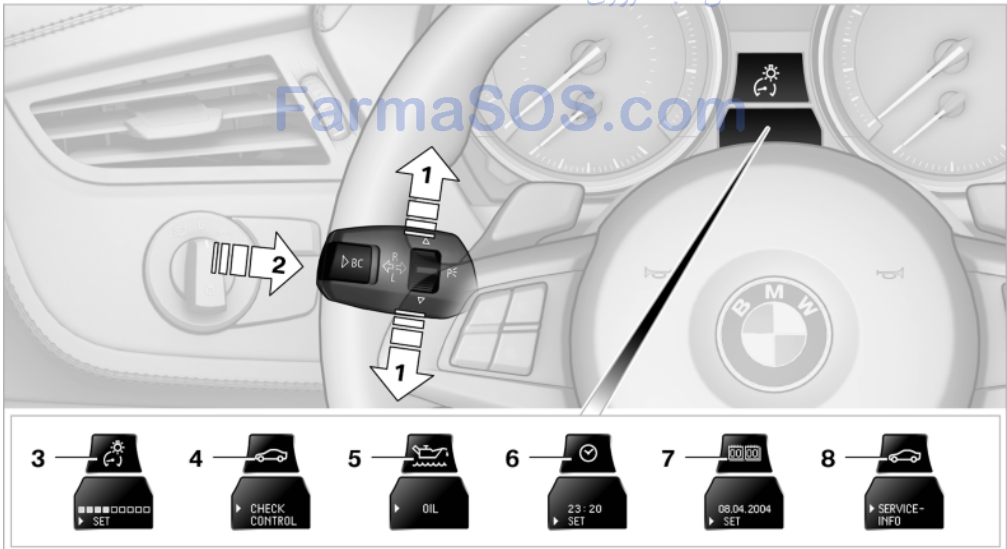
4. Turn the controller until the desired distance is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

The distance is entered automatically during destination guidance using the navigation system*.

Settings and information

Operating concept

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵



- 1 Button for:

- ▷ Selecting the display

- ▷ Setting values
- 2 Button for:
 - ▷ Confirming selected display or set values
 - ▷ Calling up computer information 63
- 3 With the lights switched on: dimming the instrument lighting 78
- 4 Calling up Check Control 71
- 5 Checking the engine oil level 198
- 6 Setting the time 66
- 7 Setting the date 67
- 8 Viewing service requirement display 69

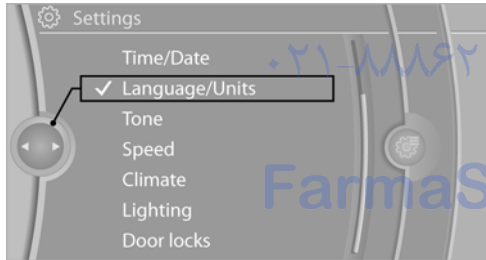
Exiting displays

The outside temperature reading and the time reappear when you press button 2 or if you make no entries within approx. 15 seconds. If required, complete the current setting first.

Units of measure

You can change the units for fuel consumption, route/distance, temperature and pressure.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"



3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

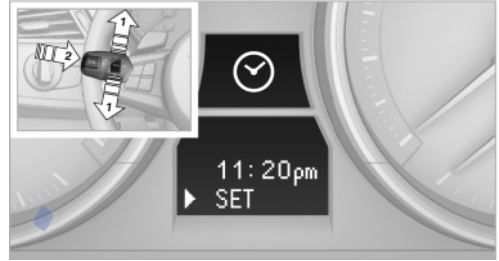
The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Clock

Setting the time


In the instrument cluster

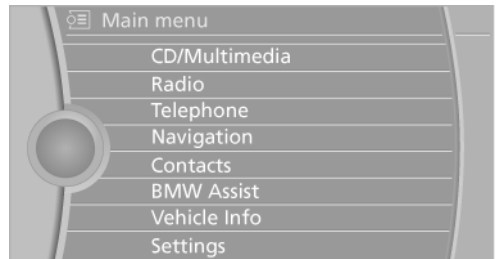
To set the 12h/24h format, refer to Setting the time format below.



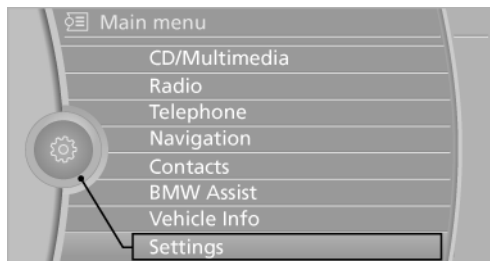
1. Press button 1 in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the time and the word "SET".
2. Press button 2.
3. Use button 1 to set the hours.
4. Press button 2 to confirm the entry.
5. Use button 1 to set the minutes.
6. Press button 2 to confirm the entry.
7. Press button 2.
The system accepts the new time.

Via the iDrive

1.  Press the button.
The main menu is displayed.

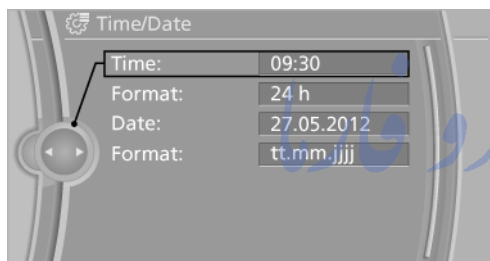


2. "Settings"



Setting the time

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time:"



4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed, and then press the controller.
5. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed, and then press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The time format is stored.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, [Personal Profile](#), refer to [page 28](#).

Date

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, [Personal Profile](#), refer to [page 28](#).

Setting the date

In the instrument cluster

To set the dd/mm or mm/dd date format, refer to Setting the date format below.



1. Push button 1 in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the date and the word "SET".
2. Press button 2.
3. Use button 1 to set the day of the month.
4. Press button 2 to confirm the entry.
5. Set the month and the year in the same way.
6. Press button 2.

The system stores the new date.

Via the iDrive

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed, and then press the controller.
5. Make the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Setting the date format

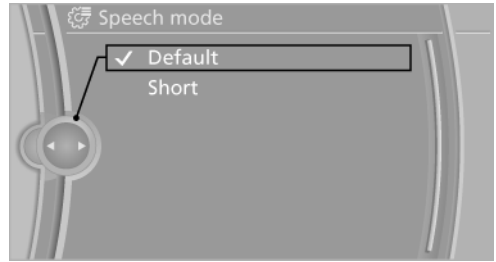
1. "Settings"

2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"



4. Select the desired format.
The date format is stored.

3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the desired dialog.



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

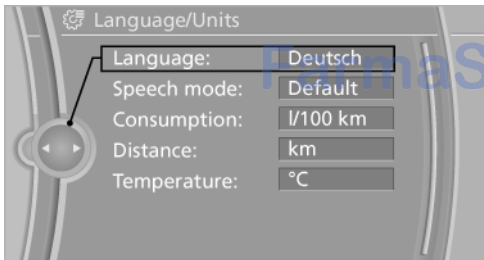
Settings on the Control Display

Language

Setting the language

To set the language on the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"



4. Select the desired language.
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness

Setting the brightness

To set the brightness of the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"



4. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

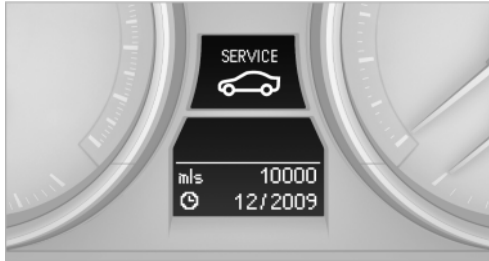
Setting the voice dialog*

To switch between a standard dialog and a short dialog.

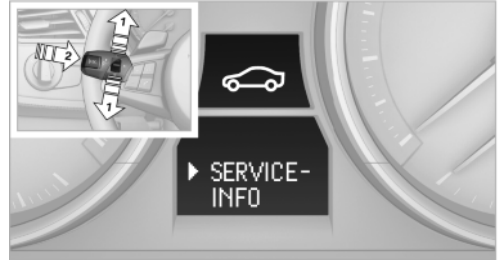
1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"

Service requirements

Display



The remaining driving distance or the due date can be displayed individually for certain maintenance procedures.



The remaining driving distance and the date of the next maintenance are displayed briefly after the ignition is switched on.

The current service requirements can be read out from the remote control by the service specialist.

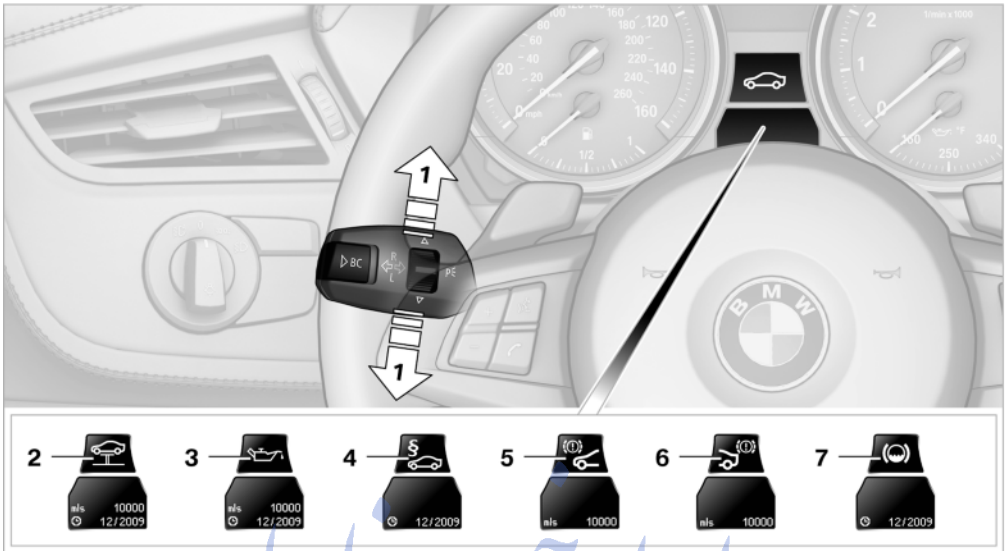
Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your service center before a service due date, [Automatic Service Request](#), refer to page 179.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press button 1 in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the words "SERVICE INFO".
3. Press button 2.
4. Use button 1 to scroll through the individual service items.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Possible displays



AM10035CMA

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|---|------------------|
| 1 | Button for selecting functions | 5 | Front brake pads |
| 2 | Service requirements | 6 | Rear brake pads |
| 3 | Engine oil | 7 | Brake fluid |
| 4 | Roadworthiness test* | | |

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

The sequence of displayed service items may vary. The data for the next service appointment is shown first.

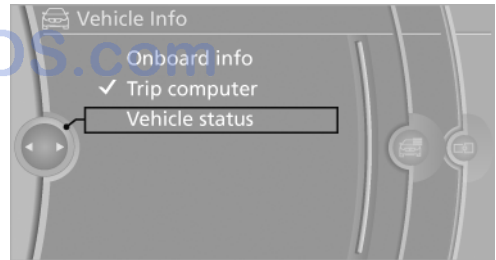
More information

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

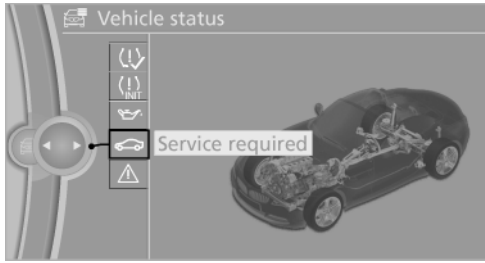
- "Vehicle Info"

- "Vehicle status"



- "Service required"

Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.



4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

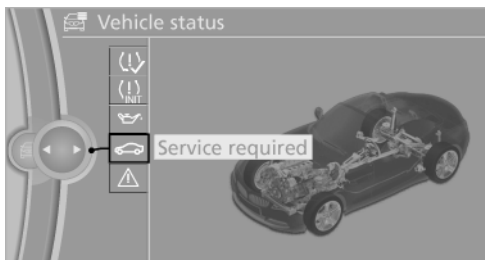
Symbols

Symbols	Description
	No service is currently required.
	The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. Please make a service appointment.
	The service deadline has already passed.

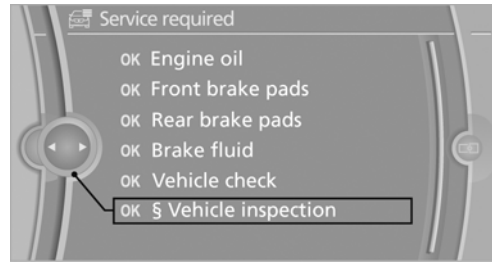
Entering appointment dates*

Enter the dates for the required inspections. Ensure that the vehicle date and time are set correctly on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"



4. "§ Vehicle inspection"



5. "Date:"
6. Create the settings.
7. Confirm.

The entered date is stored.

Automatic Service Request*

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your service center before a service due date.

You can check when your service center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

Check Control

The concept

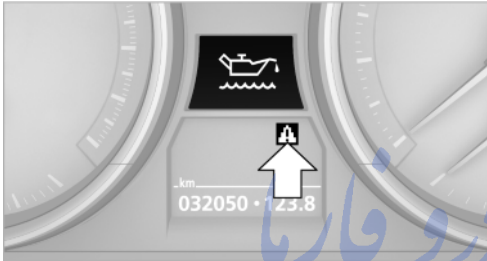
The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any malfunctions in the systems monitored.

Such Check Control messages involve indicator or warning lamps in the instrument cluster and, in some circumstances, an acoustic signal and text messages at the bottom of the Control Display.

Indicator/warning lamps



The indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.



⚠ indicates that Check Control messages have been stored. You can view the Check Control messages whenever it is convenient for you.

Explanatory text messages

Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

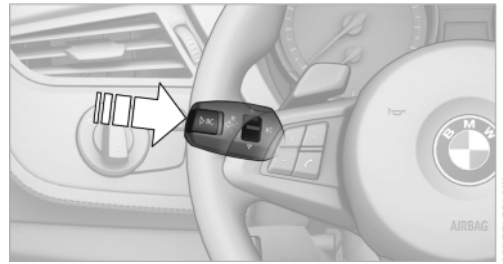
For most Check Control messages, you can view more information later, e.g., regarding the cause of a malfunction and how to respond; refer to the information provided below.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

To exit the displayed information:

Move the controller to the left.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button in the turn indicator lever.

Some Check Control messages are displayed until the malfunctions have been rectified. They cannot be hidden. If several malfunctions occur at the same time, they are displayed in succession.



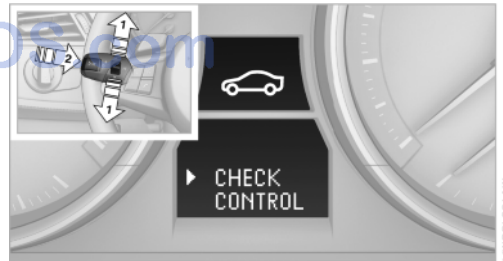
They are marked with the symbol shown here.

Other messages are automatically hidden after approx. 20 seconds, but are kept in memory.



They are marked with the symbol shown here.

Viewing stored Check Control messages




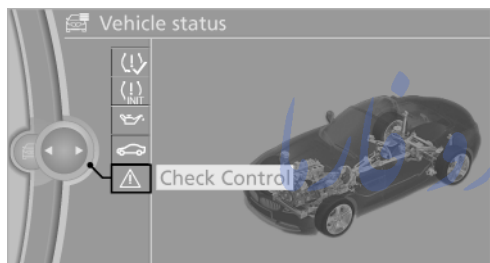
1. Press button 1 in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the words "CHECK CONTROL".
2. Press button 2. If there is no Check Control message, this is indicated by "CHECK OK". If a Check Control message has been stored, the corresponding lamp comes on.

It is accompanied by a text message on the Control Display.

3. Push button 1 to check for other messages.
4. Press button 2.
The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1.  Press the button.
2. "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Check Control"



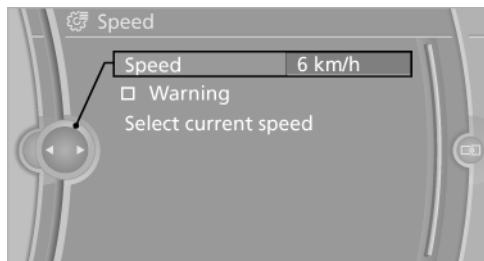
5. Select the text message.

Speed limit

You can enter a speed, and a Check Control message will indicate when you reach this speed. This enables you to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area, for example. You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"

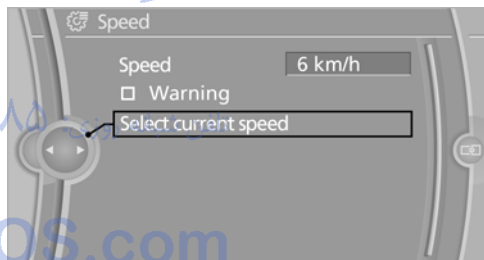
3. "Warning at:"



4. Turn the controller until the desired limit is displayed.
5. Press the controller.
The speed limit is stored.

Applying your current speed as the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"



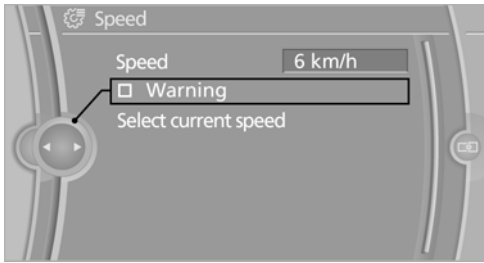
4. Press the controller.

The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating/deactivating the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"

3. "Warning"



4. Press the controller.

The limit warning is switched on.

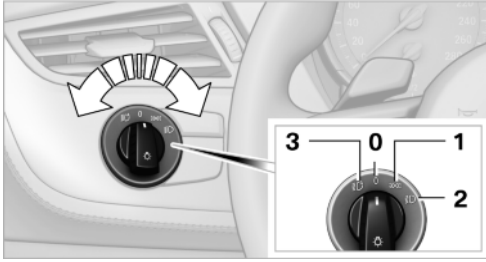
امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Lamps

At a glance



- 0 Lamps off
Daytime running lights
- 1 Parking lamps and low beams
- 2 Low-beam headlamps and welcome lamps
- 3 Automatic headlamp control*, daytime running lights, welcome lamps, High-beam Assistant*, and adaptive light control*

When you open the driver's door with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off if the light switch is in position 0, 2, or 3.

Switch on the parking lamps if necessary, switch position 1.

Parking lamps/low beams, headlamp control

Parking lamps

Switch position : the vehicle lamps light up on all sides, e.g., for parking.

Do not use the parking lamps for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking, it is preferable to switch on the one-sided [roadside parking lamps](#), refer to [page 77](#).

Low beams

Switch position with the ignition switched on: the low beams light up.

Welcome lamps

When parking the vehicle, leave the switch in position or : the parking and interior lamps light up briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating the welcome lamps

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome light"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

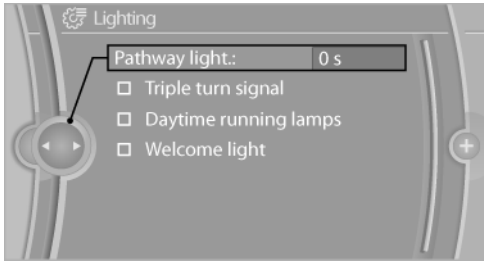
Headlamp courtesy delay feature

The low beams stay lit for a short while after the ignition is switched off, if the lamps are switched off and the headlamp flasher is switched on.

Setting the duration

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"


3. "Pathway light.: s"



4. Set the duration.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Automatic headlamp control

Switch position  : the low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient light, e.g., in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation. The LED next to the symbol lights up.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.






Personal responsibility

The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the lamps manually under these conditions. ◀

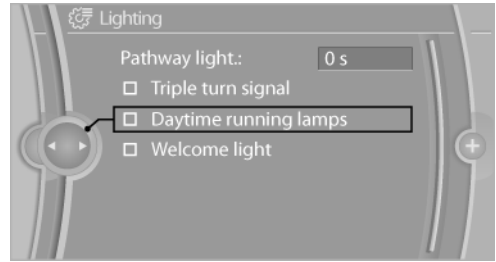
Daytime running lights

The daytime running lights light up in position 0,  and . After the ignition is switched off, the parking lamps light up in position .

Activating/deactivating

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"

3. "Daytime running lamps"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adaptive light control*


The concept

Adaptive light control is a variable headlamp control system that enables dynamic illumination of the road surface.

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

Controls

Activating

Switch position  with the ignition switched on.

Auxiliary function*:

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the adaptive light control directs light towards the front passenger side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

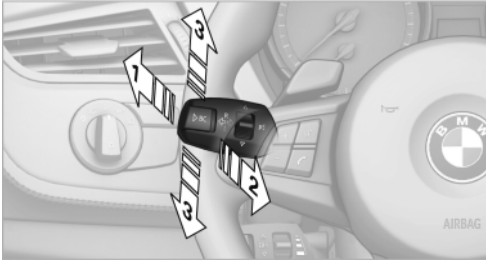
When driving in reverse, only the turning lamp is active and illuminates the outside of the curve.

Malfunction

A message is displayed.

Adaptive light control is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High beams/roadside parking lamps



- 1 High beams
- 2 Headlamp flasher
- 3 Roadside parking lamps*

Left and right roadside parking lamps*

There is an additional option of switching on the lamps on the side of the car facing the road when parked.

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the pressure point for a longer period, arrow 3.

The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Therefore, do not leave them on for unduly long periods of time; otherwise, the battery might not have enough power to start the engine.

Switching off

Press the lever in the opposite direction to the pressure point, arrow 3.

High-beam Assistant*

The concept

When the lights are switched on, this system automatically switches the high beams on and off. The procedure is controlled by a sensor on the front of the interior rearview mirror. The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on whenever the traffic situation allows. The driver can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating the High-beam Assistant

1. Turn the light switch to .
2. With the low beams switched on, briefly push the turn indicator lever in the direction of the high beam.

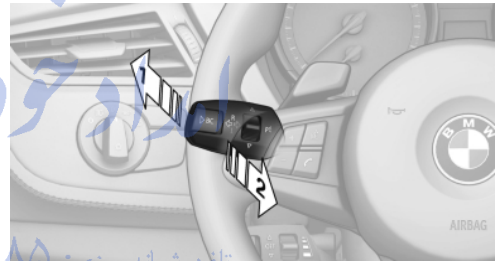


The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

When the lights are switched on, the high beams are switched on and off automatically.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.

Switching the high beams on and off manually



- ▶ High beams on, arrow 1.
- ▶ High beams off/headlamp flasher, arrow 2.

To reactivate the High-beam Assistant, briefly push the turn indicator lever toward the high beams.

System limits



Personal responsibility

The High-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually switch off the high beams in situations where this is required to avoid a safety risk. ◀

The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▶ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.

- ▷ In detecting poorly-lit road users, such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-observed oncoming traffic on freeways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ At low speeds.
- ▷ When the windshield in front of the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Sensor view field

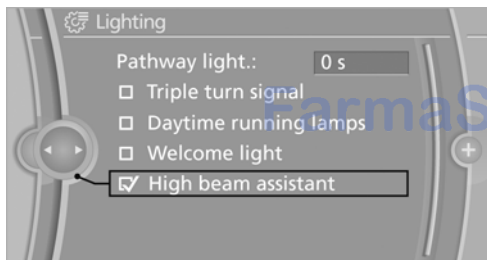
The view field of the sensor is located on the front of the interior rearview mirror.

Do not cover this area with stickers, etc.

Clean the view field, refer to page 217.

Switching off via iDrive

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "High beam assistant"



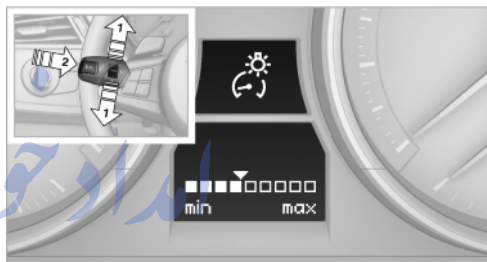
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Instrument lighting

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.



1. Push button 1 up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the brightness setting and the word "SET".
2. Press button 2.



3. Push button 1 up or down to select the desired brightness level.
4. Press button 2.

The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

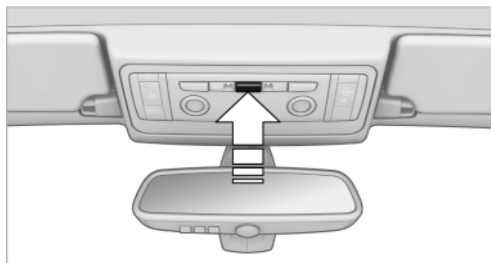
Interior lamps

The interior lamps, footwell lamps*, entry lamps*, trunk lamp, and courtesy lamps* are controlled automatically.

The LEDs for the courtesy lamps* are set in the door handles and illuminate the ground in front of the doors.

To avoid draining the battery, all lamps inside the car are switched off about 8 minutes after the ignition is switched off, [Start/Stop button](#), refer to page 50.

Switching interior lamps on/off manually

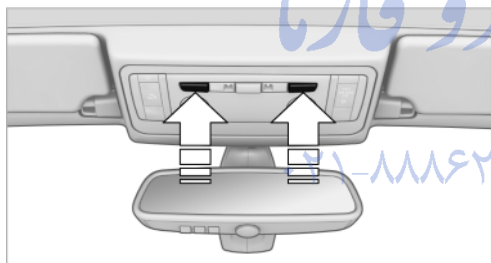


Interior lamps*:

To switch on and off, press the button.

To switch off the interior lamps, footwell lamps*, entry lamps*, and courtesy lamps* permanently, press the button for the front interior lamps for about 3 seconds.

Reading lamps

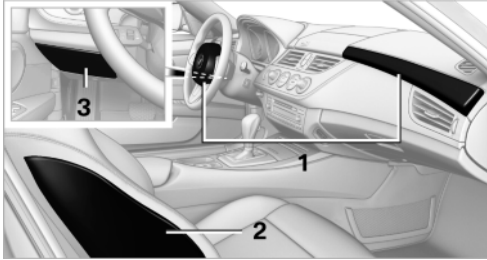


The reading lamps are located next to the interior lamp. To switch on and off, press the button.

Safety

Airbags

The following airbags are located under the marked covers:



- 1 Front airbags
- 2 Side airbags in the seat backrests
- 3 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint.

Side airbags


In a lateral impact, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest area.

Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.


Even when all instructions are followed closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive individuals.

 Information on how to ensure the optimal protective effect of the airbags

- ▷ Keep at a distance from the airbags.

- ▷ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim, holding your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the danger of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible if the airbag is triggered.
- ▷ There should be no people, animals, or objects between an airbag and a person.
- ▷ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- ▷ Keep the dashboard and window on the front passenger side clear, i.e., do not cover with adhesive labels or coverings, and do not attach holders such as for navigation instruments and mobile phones.
- ▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the footwell; otherwise, leg injuries can occur if the front airbag is triggered.
- ▷ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not approved specifically for seats with integrated side airbags.
- ▷ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- ▷ Make sure that passengers do not lean their heads against the side airbag; otherwise, serious injuries could result if the airbag suddenly deployed.
- ▷ Do not remove the airbag restraint system.
- ▷ Do not remove the steering wheel.
- ▷ Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▷ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to the covers of the steering wheel, the dashboard and the seats. ◀

 In the case of a malfunction, deactivation and after triggering of the airbags

Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered; otherwise, there is the danger of burns.


Only have the airbags checked, repaired or dismantled and the airbag generator scrapped by your service center or a workshop that has the necessary authorization for handling explosives.

Non-professional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired triggering of the airbag, either of which could result in injury. ◀


Warning notices and information about the airbags can also be found on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of the passenger airbags

The system determines whether the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the resistance of the human body. Front, knee and side airbags on the passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly.

 Passenger feet in the footwell
Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell; otherwise, the front passenger airbags may not function properly. ◀

The indicator lamp above the interior rearview mirror shows the current status of the passenger airbags, deactivated or activated, refer to Status of passenger airbags below.

 Follow the safety and operating instructions

Before transporting a child on the passenger seat, read the safety and operating instructions under [Transporting children safely, refer to page 48](#). ◀

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

The front, knee and side airbags can also be deactivated by adolescents and adults sitting in certain positions; the indicator lamp for the passenger airbags comes on. In this case, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired airbag status cannot be

achieved by changing the sitting position, do not transport the passenger in the vehicle.

To make sure that occupation of the seat cushion can be detected correctly:

- ▶ Do not attach seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items to the passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW.
- ▶ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.

Status of passenger airbags



The indicator lamp for the passenger airbags shows the functional status of the passenger's front, knee and side airbags in accordance with whether and how the passenger seat is occupied. The indicator lamp shows whether the passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

- ▶ The indicator lamp lights up when a child who is properly seated in a child restraint system intended for that purpose is detected on the seat or the seat is empty. The front, knee and side airbags for the passenger are not activated. Most child seats are detected by the system, Especially the child seats required by NHTSA at the time that the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.
- ▶ The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a person of sufficient size and in a correct sitting position is detected on the seat. The front, knee and passenger airbags for the passenger are activated.


Operational readiness of airbag system



In the radio ready state and beyond, refer to page 50, the warning lamp comes on briefly to indicate that the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners are operational.

Airbag system malfunction

- ▷ Warning lamp does not light up in the radio ready state.
- ▷ Warning lamp remains permanently on.

 Have the airbag system checked without delay if there is a malfunction

In the event of a malfunction in the airbag system, have it checked without delay; otherwise, there is the risk that the system will not function as intended even if a sufficiently severe accident occurs. ◀

Flat Tire Monitor FTM*

The concept

The system detects a pressure loss in a tire on the basis of speed differences between the individual wheels during a trip.

In the event of pressure loss, the rolling circumference changes and, thus, the rotating speed of the affected wheel. This change is detected and is reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirements

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

System limits



Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance. ◀

A natural, even pressure loss in all four tires cannot be detected.

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

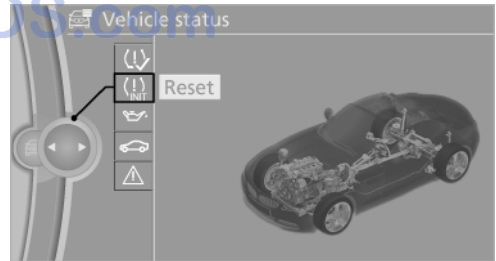
- ▷ When the system has not been initialized.
- ▷ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- ▷ Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration.
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

Initialization

The initialization process adopts the set inflation tire pressures as reference values for the detection of a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains*.

1. "Vehicle Info" تلفظ
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"



4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Start the initialization with "Reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Indication of a flat tire



The warning lamps come on in yellow and red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, a signal sounds.



There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Carefully reduce your speed to a maximum of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not increase the speed again.



Do not continue driving without run-flat tires

Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents.◀

2. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

If the tire inflation pressure in all tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

- ▷ With a light load: 1 person without luggage: approx. 155 miles/250 km.
- ▷ With a medium load: 1 person, trunk full, or 2 people without luggage: approx. 94 miles/150 km.
- ▷ With a full load: 2 people, trunk full: approx. 30 miles/50 km.

If there is minor tire damage, especially on the tire tread, the distance that you can travel with the damaged tire can be extended.

After notification, inflate the damaged tire to a maximum of 43 psi/3.5 bar at the next opportunity.

Do not reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor. The existing flat tire notification will continue to act as a reminder of the defective tire. The procedure can be repeated several times.



Continued driving with a flat tire

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.◀



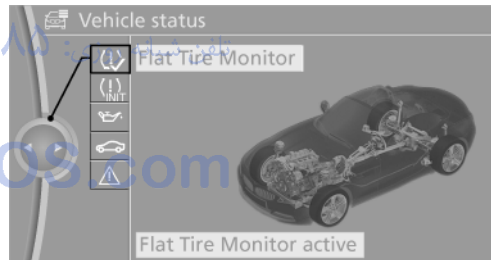
Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of the tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, and contact your service center.◀

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the FTM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"



The status is displayed.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM*

The concept

TPM checks the inflation pressures of the four mounted tires. The system notifies you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be reset while all tire inflation pressures are correct.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics. Otherwise, the system may malfunction.

Reset the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

System limits



Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance. ◀

The system does not function properly if it has not been reset, e.g., it may identify a tire as flat in spite of the fact that the tire is filled to the correct inflation pressure.

The system is deactivated and is unable to detect flat tires if a wheel not equipped with TPM electronics has been mounted, e.g., a compact wheel, or if TPM is experiencing temporary interference from other systems or devices that use the same frequency.

Status indicator on the Control Display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

TPM takes into account that tire pressures change while the vehicle is being driven. The tire pressures do not need to be corrected unless the TPM instructs you to do so by means of color indicators.

Green

The tire inflation pressure corresponds to the established target value.

"TPM active" appears on the Control Display.

One wheel is yellow

There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels are yellow

There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray


The system cannot detect a flat tire.

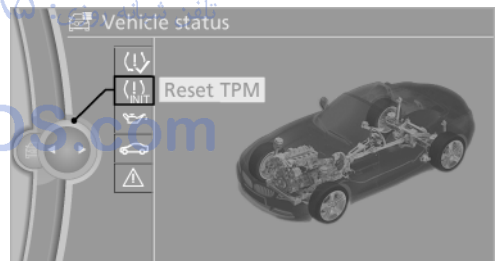
Possible reasons for this:

- ▷ TPM is being reset.
- ▷ Temporary malfunction caused by systems or devices using the same radio frequency.
- ▷ Malfunction.

Resetting the system

Reset the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

1.  Press the button. The start menu is opened.
2. "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Reset TPM"




5. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
6. Start the initialization with "Reset TPM".
7. Drive away. The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After driving a few minutes, the set inflation pressures in the tires are accepted as the target values to be monitored. The system reset is completed during your drive, and can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the reset is continued automatically. On the Control Display, the tires are shown in green and "TPM active" is displayed again.


If a flat tire is detected while the system is re-setting and determining the inflation pressures, all tires on the Control Display are displayed in yellow. The message "Low tire!" is shown.

Low tire pressure message

 The warning lamps come on in yellow and red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, a signal sounds. There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure.




1. Cautiously reduce the vehicle speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

 Do not continue driving without run-flat tires


Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents. ◀

2. In the event of complete pressure loss, 0 psi/ 0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guidelines:

- ▶ With a light load: 1 person without luggage: approx. 155 miles/250 km
- ▶ With a medium load: 1 person, trunk full, or 2 people without luggage: approx. 95 miles/ 150 km
- ▶ With a full load: 2 people, trunk full: approx. 30 miles/50 km


 Continued driving with a flat tire
Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties. ◀

 Final tire failure
Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of the tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could


come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, and contact your service center. ◀

Message when not reset


 The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. The system was not reset, e.g., after a wheel change.

Check the tire inflation pressure and [reset the system, refer to page 84](#).

Status display

1.  Press the button The start menu is opened.
2. "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "TPM"
5. The status is displayed.

Malfunction

 The small warning lamp flashes in yellow and then lights up continuously; the larger warning lamp comes on in yellow. On the Control Display, the tires are shown in gray and a message appears. No flat tire can be detected.

This type of message is shown in the following situations:

- ▶ If there is a malfunction Have the system checked.
- ▶ If a wheel without TPM electronics has been mounted
- ▶ If TPM is temporarily malfunctioning due to other systems or devices using the same radio frequency.

Erklärung laut NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

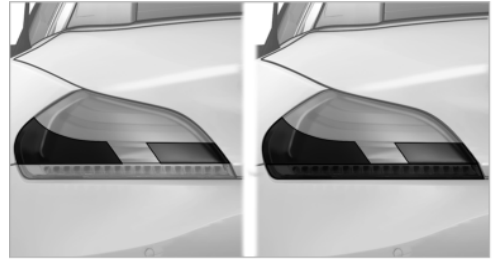
Each tire should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire in-

flation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Brake force display*

The concept



- ▶ During normal brake application, the outer brake lamps light up.
- ▶ During heavy brake application, the lower brake lamps light up in addition.

The brake force display is automatically activated if the turn signal is not flashing.

Driving stability control systems

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle remains steerable even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Electronic brake-force distribution

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

Dynamic Brake Control DBC

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost. It thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking.

This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

The concept

DSC prevents traction loss in the driving wheels when driving away and accelerating.

DSC also recognizes unstable vehicle conditions, such as fishtailing or nose-diving. Subject to physical limits, DSC helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes at individual wheels.



Adjust your driving style to the situation

An appropriate driving style is always the responsibility of the driver.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC.

Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin by driving in a risky manner. ◀

Deactivating/activating the DSC OFF program

The program can be deactivated/activated via Dynamic Driving Control, refer to page 88.

For better control



The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC

The concept

The DTC system and the TRACTION program are a variant of the DSC in which forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum forward momentum on special road conditions, e.g., unplowed snowy roads, but driving stability is limited.

It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- ▶ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- ▶ When rocking the vehicle or driving off in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- ▶ When driving with snow chains.

Deactivating/activating Dynamic Traction Control DTC

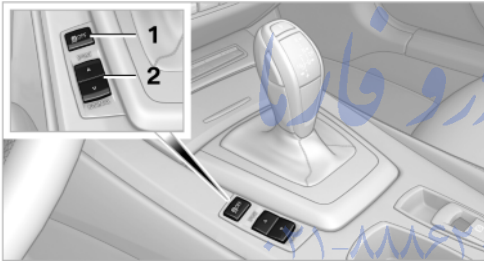
The system and program can be deactivated/activated via **Dynamic Driving Control**, refer to page 88.



Dynamic Driving Control

The concept

Dynamic Driving Control can be used to adjust the driving dynamics of the vehicle. Several programs are available for this purpose; they can be activated using the two Dynamic Driving Control buttons.

Operating the programs



Press the button	Program
	DSC OFF TRACTION
	SPORT+ SPORT NORMAL


DSC OFF



Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.


To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC OFF

 Press and hold the button, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for the DSC lights up in the instrument cluster and DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.


The DSC system is switched off.

Deactivating DSC OFF

 Press the button. DSC OFF and the DSC indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lamps


When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

 The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

TRACTION

Maximum traction on loose road surfaces. Dynamic Traction Control DTC is switched on. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

Activating TRACTION

 Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The DSC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

Deactivating TRACTION



Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lamps

When DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.



The indicator lamp lights up: Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated.

SPORT+



Sporty driving with optimized chassis and suspension during limited driving stabilization.

Dynamic Traction Control is switched on.

The driver handles several of the stabilization tasks.

Activating SPORT+



Press the button repeatedly until SPORT+ and the DSC indicator lamp appear in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lamps

SPORT+ is displayed in the instrument cluster.



The indicator lamp lights up: Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated.

SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the suspension for greater driving agility with maximum driving stabilization.

Activating SPORT



Press the button repeatedly until SPORT+ appears in the instrument cluster.

NORMAL

For a balanced tuning with maximum driving stabilization.

Activating NORMAL



Press the button repeatedly until the program display disappears in the instrument cluster.

Displays in the instrument cluster



The selected program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Drive-off assistant

This system supports driving away on gradients. The parking brake is not required.

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive away without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle load, the vehicle may roll back slightly.



Driving off without delay

After releasing the foot brake, start driving without delay, since the drive-off assistant will not hold the vehicle in place for more than approx. 2 seconds and the vehicle will begin rolling back. ◀

Servotronic*

The concept

The Servotronic varies the steering force required to turn the wheels depending on the speed at which you are driving. Power steering provides strong support at low speeds, which means that little effort is needed to turn the wheels. Power steering support lessens as your speed increases.

The system works automatically.

Malfunction

Malfunctions are displayed via **Check Control**, refer to page 71.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Driving comfort

Cruise control*

The concept

Cruise control is available for use at speeds of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h and higher. The car then stores and maintains the speed that you specify using the lever on the steering column. In order to maintain the specified speed, the system brakes the vehicle when the engine braking effect is insufficient on downhill gradients.



Do not use cruise control

Do not use the system if unfavorable conditions make it impossible to drive at a constant speed, for instance:

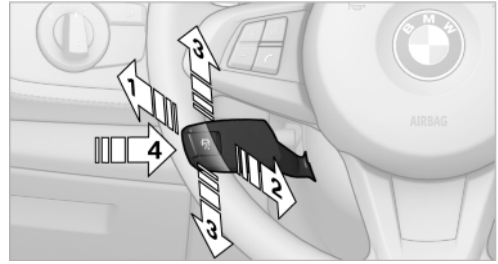
- ▶ On curvy roads.
- ▶ In heavy traffic.
- ▶ On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.

Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident. ◀

Manual transmission

You can shift gears while cruise control is activated. An indicator lamp notifies you that you should shift gears when you drive for an extended period at very high or very low engine speeds, or the system is deactivated.

One lever for all functions



- 1 Storing and maintaining speed or accelerating
- 2 Storing and maintaining speed or decelerating
- 3 Deactivating cruise control
- 4 Resuming a speed stored beforehand

Maintaining current speed

Tap the lever, arrow 1, or pull it briefly, arrow 2.

The car's current speed is stored and maintained. It is displayed on the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

On uphill gradients, it may prove impossible to maintain the set speed if current engine power output is insufficient. If the engine braking effect is insufficient on downhill slopes, the system will brake the vehicle slightly.

Increasing desired speed

Repeatedly press the lever to the resistance point or beyond, arrow 1, until the desired speed is reached.

- ▶ Each time the lever is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▶ Each time the lever is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is increased by up to 5 mph/10 km/h.

The system stores and maintains the speed.

Accelerating using the lever

Accelerating slightly:

Press the lever to the resistance point, arrow 1, and hold until the desired speed is reached.

Accelerating significantly:

Press the lever beyond the resistance point, arrow 1, and hold until the desired speed is reached.

The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system stores and maintains the speed.

Decreasing speed

Repeatedly pull the lever to the resistance point or beyond, arrow 2, until the desired speed is displayed.

- ▷ Each time the lever is pulled to the resistance point, the desired speed is decreased by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the lever is pulled beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is reduced by up to 5 mph or 10 km/h until the minimum speed of 20 mph/30 km/h is achieved.

The system stores and maintains the speed.

Interrupting the system

Tap the lever upwards or downwards, arrow 3.

The displays in the speedometer change color. In addition, the system is automatically deactivated:

- ▷ When you brake the vehicle.
- ▷ When you switch gears very slowly or shift to neutral in cars with a manual transmission.
- ▷ When you engage selector lever position N in cars with an automatic transmission.
- ▷ When you engage transmission position N in 7-gear sport automatic transmissions with a dual clutch.
- ▷ When you activate the Dynamic Traction Control DTC or deactivate DSC.
- ▷ When DSC or ABS is intervening.

Cruise control is not deactivated by depressing the accelerator pedal. Once the accelerator pedal is released, the stored speed is achieved again and maintained.

Warning lamp



A message appears on the Control Display.

The warning lamp comes on, for example, when cruise control has been deactivated as a result of DSC intervention.

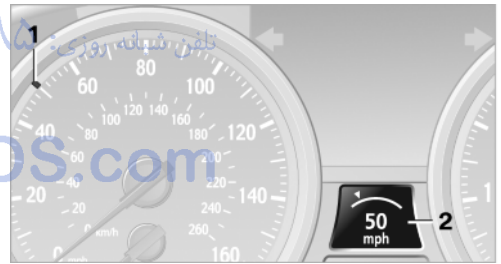
Deactivating the system

- ▷ Press the lever upward or downward twice, arrow 3.
 - ▷ Switch off the ignition.
- The stored speed is cleared.

Resuming a speed stored beforehand

Press the button, arrow 4. The last stored speed is resumed and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster



- 1 Stored speed
- 2 Selected speed is displayed briefly

If --- mph or --- km/h temporarily appears in the instrument cluster display, it is possible that the system prerequisites for operation are currently not met.

Call up Check Control messages, refer to page 72.

Malfunction



The warning lamp comes on when the system has failed.

A message appears on the Control Display.
More information, refer to page 71.

Park Distance Control PDC*

The concept

PDC supports you when parking.

Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of* or behind your vehicle are indicated with:

- ▷ Signal tones.
- ▷ Visual display.

Measurement

Measurements are made by ultrasound sensors in the bumpers.

The range is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given:

- ▷ By the front* sensors and two rear corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm.
- ▷ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

System limits



Check the traffic situation as well

PDC cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation. Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside of the PDC detection range.

Loud noises from outside and inside the vehicle may prevent you from hearing the PDC's signal tone. ◀



Avoid driving quickly with PDC

Avoid approaching an object quickly.

Avoid driving away quickly while PDC is not yet active.

For technical reasons, the system may otherwise be too late in issuing a warning. ◀

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects can reach the physical limits of ultrasonic measurement, for instance:

- ▷ With tow bars and trailer hitches.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With low objects.
- ▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

High, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected.

False warnings

PDC may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- ▷ In heavy rain.
- ▷ When sensors are very dirty or covered in ice.
- ▷ When sensors are covered in snow.
- ▷ On rough road surfaces.
- ▷ In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, e.g., in underground garages.
- ▷ In heavy exhaust.
- ▷ Due to other ultrasound sources, e.g., sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

Switching on automatically

Engage reverse gear with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off and the LED goes out:

- ▷ After approx. 165 ft/50 m when driving forward.
- ▷ Above approx. 20 mph/30 km/h when driving forward.

Switch on the system again if necessary.

Signal tones

When approaching an object, an intermittent tone is sounded that indicates the position of the object. For example, if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object becomes, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 12 in/30 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

If objects are located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- ▷ If the vehicle stops in front of an object that is detected by only one of the corner sensors.
- ▷ If moving parallel to a wall.

The signal tone is switched off:

- ▷ When the vehicle moves away from an object by more than approx. 4 in/10 cm.
- ▷ When selector lever position P is engaged.

Volume

You can set the [volume of the PDC signal, refer to page 141](#).

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds. The display appears as soon as PDC is switched on.

Malfunction



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on. PDC has failed.

A message appears on the Control Display.

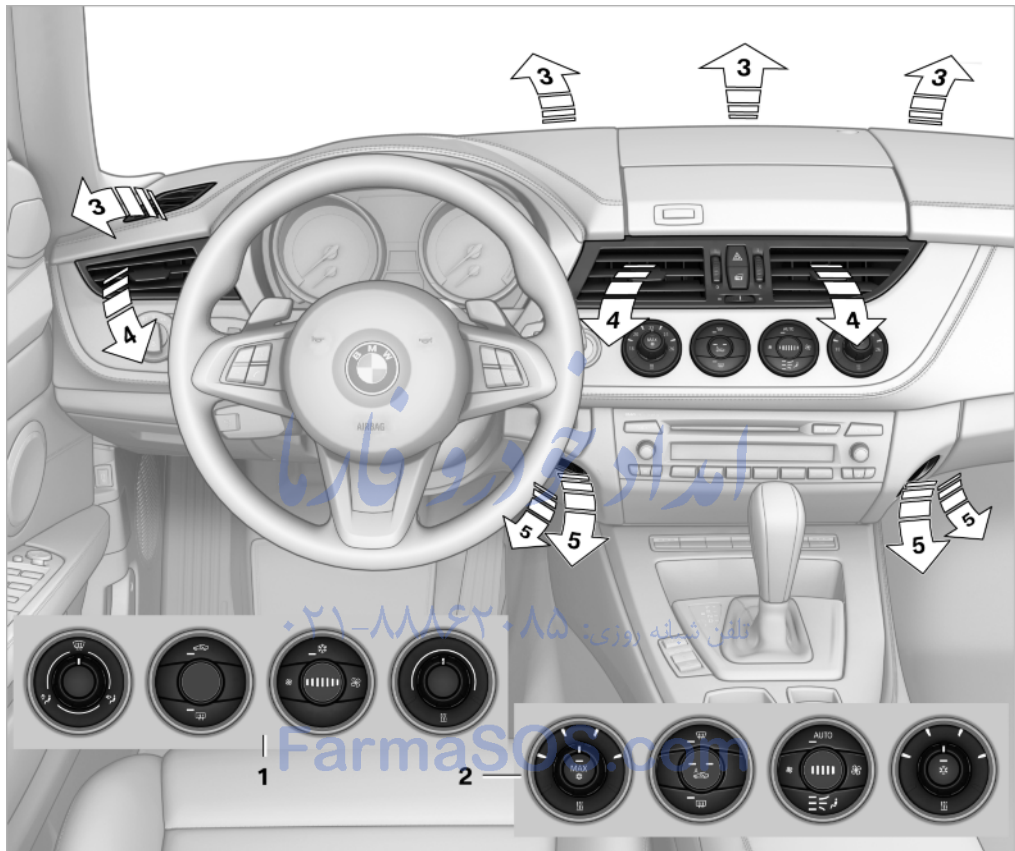
Have the system checked.

To ensure full operability:

- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- ▷ When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.

Climate control

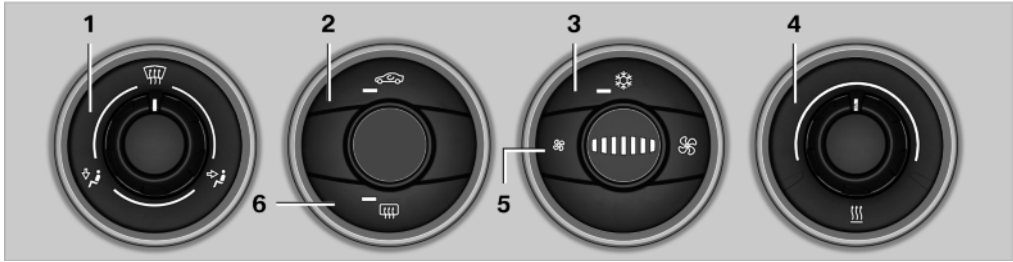
Overview



- 1 Equipment variant: air conditioner 96
- 2 Equipment variant: automatic climate control* 98
- 3 Air vent: the airflow is directed toward the windshield and side windows

- 4 Air vent: air for the upper body area. The thumbwheels increase and decrease the air supply continuously; the levers change the direction of the airflow.
- 5 Air vent: air for the knee area, footwell

Air conditioner






MAY14BCMA

- 1 Vent settings
- 2 Recirculated air mode
- 3 Cooling function
- 4 Temperature
- 5 Air volume
- 6 Rear window defroster

Vent settings



Direct the flow of air to the windows , to the upper body area  or to the knee area and footwell . Intermediate settings are possible. In the 6 o'clock position, a small amount of air is also directed toward the windows to keep them from fogging over.

Air volume



Press the corresponding button. The higher the rate, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air flow rate may be reduced or the blower may be switched off entirely to save on battery power.

Recirculated air mode



If the air outside the car has an unpleasant odor or contains pollutants, shut off the supply to the interior of the car temporarily. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

The recirculated air mode can also be [activated/deactivated, refer to page 12](#), via a button* on the steering wheel.



Only use recirculated air mode for a limited period

If condensation starts to form on the inside window surfaces during operation in the recirculated air mode, you should switch it off while also increasing the air flow rate as required. The recirculated air mode should not be used continuously for lengthy periods; otherwise, the quality of the air inside the car will gradually deteriorate. ◀

Switching the system on/off



Press the left button at the minimum fan speed. The blower and air conditioner are completely switched off and the air supply is cut off.

To switch on the air conditioner, set the desired air flow rate.

Switching cooling function on/off



The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before reheating it as required, according to the temperature setting. This function is only available while the engine is running.

The cooling function helps to prevent condensation on the windows or to remove it quickly. Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

Rear window defroster



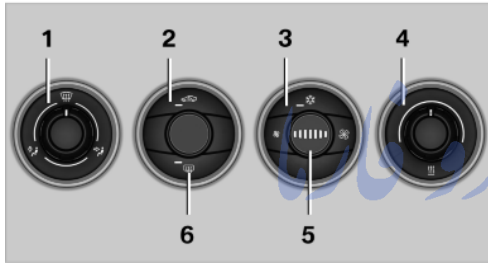
The defroster switches off automatically after a certain time or when the hardtop is opened.


Temperature




To increase the temperature, turn the rotary switch clockwise towards red. For a lower temperature, turn the rotary switch counter-clockwise towards blue.

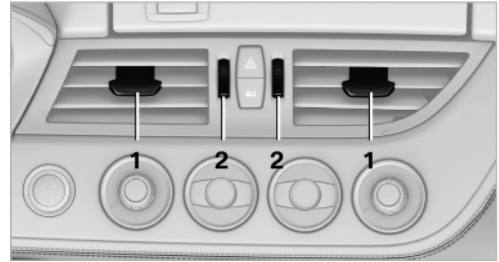
Defrosting windows and removing condensation



- 1 Air distribution 1 in position .
- 2 Deactivate recirculated air mode 2.
- 3 Switch on cooling function 3.
- 4 Temperature 4 to the right, red.

- 5 Set the air flow rate 5 to the maximum level.
- 6 Switch on the rear window defroster 6 to defrost the rear window .

Ventilation



- 1 Use the lever to change the direction of the air flow
- 2 Use the thumbwheels to smoothly open and close the air vents

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vents to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance if the interior has become too warm.

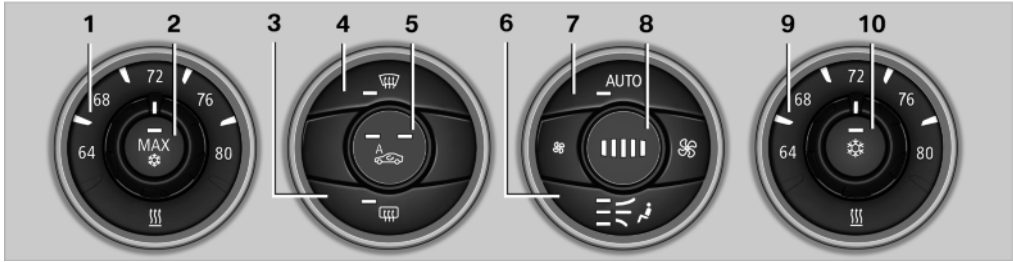
Draft-free ventilation

Adjust the vents to let the air flow past you.

Microfilter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air. The microfilter is changed by your service center during routine maintenance work.

Automatic climate control*



MAY0158CMA

- 1 Temperature, left side of passenger compartment
- 2 Maximum cooling
- 3 Rear window defroster
- 4 Defrosting windows and removing condensation
- 5 Automatic recirculated air control/recirculated air mode
- 6 Manual air distribution
- 7 AUTO program
- 8 Air flow rate, manual, climate level
- 9 Temperature, right side of passenger compartment
- 10 Switching cooling function on/off manually

Comfortable interior climate

For almost all conditions, the AUTO program 7 offers the optimum air distribution and air flow rate, refer to AUTO programs below. Select a comfortable interior temperature only.


The following sections contain more detailed information on the available setting options.

Most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, [Personal Profile settings](#), refer to page 29.

Air distribution, manual

Depending on the selected setting, the air is directed to the windshield, to the upper body area, to the knee area and into the footwell.

Adjusting air distribution manually

 Press the button repeatedly until the air distribution is set as required. The corresponding LED lights up.

The manual air distribution is also switched on when the AUTO program is deactivated.

Temperature



Set the desired temperatures individually for the driver's and passenger sides.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible regardless of the season, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary, and then maintains it.

To give the automatic climate control enough time to achieve the set temperature, do not switch between different temperature settings in quick succession.

Maximum heating power can be obtained with the highest setting, regardless of the outside temperature.

The lowest setting effects continuous cooling.

Switching the cooling function on and off



The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before reheating it as required, according to the temperature setting. This

function is only available while the engine is running.

The cooling function helps to prevent condensation on the windows or to remove it quickly.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Maximum cooling



The air is cooled by the maximum amount at an external temperature above 32 °F/0 °C and with the engine running.

The automatic climate control goes into recirculated air mode at the lowest temperature. Air flows at maximum rate from the vents for the upper body area. You should therefore open the vents for maximum cooling.

AUTO program

The AUTO program automatically adjusts the air distribution to the windshield and side windows, toward the upper body area, and into the footwell and knee area.

The air flow rate and air distribution, in addition to your temperature specifications, will be adapted to outside influences as a result of seasonal changes, e.g., sunlight or window condensation.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

Manual air distribution and air flow rate are activated when the AUTO program is deactivated.

AUTO program climate level

The climate levels can be used to vary the intensity when the AUTO program is switched on. For example, air flow is adjusted automatically to optimize climate control.



When the AUTO program is switched on, the climate level of the AUTO program can be selected using the buttons for controlling the manual air flow rate.

The selected climate level is displayed by an LED.

Convertible program

When the hardtop is open, the convertible program is activated as well. In the convertible program, the automatic climate control is optimized for driving with the hardtop open. In addition, the air flow rate is increased as vehicle speed increases.

The effectiveness of the convertible program can be enhanced considerably by installing the wind deflector.

Adjusting air flow rate manually



Press the left side of the button to reduce air flow. Press the right side of the button to increase it.

The air volume may be reduced automatically to save battery power. The display remains the same.

Switching the system on/off

With the blower at its lowest setting, press the left side of the button to switch off the automatic climate control. All displays are cleared except for the rear window defroster if it is switched on.

Press any button except the rear window defroster to reactivate the automatic climate control.

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the interior.



This function can be switched on using the right-hand button under the following conditions:

- ▶ Up to 15 minutes after switching off the engine.

- ▷ When the engine is warm.
- ▷ With sufficient battery voltage.
- ▷ At an external temperature under 77 °F/ 25 °C.

The middle LED is lit when the function is on.

Automatic recirculated air control/ recirculated air mode



Switch on the desired operating mode by pressing this button repeatedly:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left LED on, automatic recirculated air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air. If necessary, the system blocks the supply of outside air and recirculates the inside air. As soon as the concentration of pollutants in the outside air has decreased sufficiently, the system automatically switches back to outside air supply.
- ▷ Right LED on, recirculated air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.



Only use recirculated air mode for a limited period

If condensation starts to form on the inside window surfaces during operation in the recirculated air mode, you should switch it off while also increasing the air flow rate as required. The recirculated air mode should not be used for an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates steadily. ◀

Defrosting windows and removing condensation



Quickly removes ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.

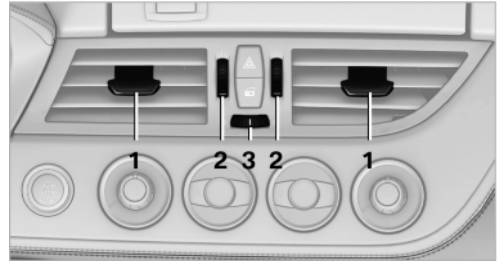
For this purpose, also switch on the cooling function.

Rear window defroster



The defroster switches off automatically after a certain time or when the hardtop is opened.

Ventilation



- 1 Use the lever to change the direction of the air flow
- 2 Use the thumbwheels to smoothly open and close the air vents
- 3 Thumbwheel for adjusting the amount of cool air from the vents to the upper body area. This can be used to adjust the air temperature for the upper body area.

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vents to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance if the interior has become too warm.

Draft-free ventilation

Adjust the vents to let the air flow past you.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your service center replaces this combined filter during routine maintenance.

Interior equipment

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

This system can replace up to three different hand-held transmitters for various types of remote-controlled equipment, such as garage doors or lighting systems.

The hand-held transmitter signal can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons.

The corresponding device can then be operated using the programmed memory button.

The LED indicates that a signal is being transmitted.

When selling the vehicle, delete the stored programs for security reasons.



During programming

During programming and before activating a device using the universal remote control, ensure that there are no people, animals, or objects in the range of movement of the remote-controlled device; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter. ◀

Compatibility



If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the hand-held transmitter, the remote-controlled device is generally compatible with the universal remote control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- ▷ Your service center.
- ▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

Programming



- 1 Memory buttons
- 2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

Press both outer buttons 1 for approx. 20 seconds until the LED flashes.

All programs of the three memory buttons 1 are cleared.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 2 to 8 in/5 to 20 cm from the memory buttons.
4. Simultaneously press the transmit button of the hand-held transmitter and the memory button of the universal remote control.

The LED flashes slowly.

5. Release both buttons when the LED flashes rapidly.
- If the LED does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step.

The device can be operated using the memory button with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Malfunction

If the device cannot be used after repeated attempts at programming, please check whether the hand-held transmitter is equipped with an alternating code system.

To do so:

- ▷ Read the instructions of the hand-held transmitter.
- ▷ Press the memory button of the universal remote control for an extended period.

If the LED flashes rapidly for a brief period and then lights up continuously for approx. 2 seconds, the hand-held transmitter is equipped with an alternating code system.

In this case, program the memory buttons as described under Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

Please obtain information on synchronizing the device in the operating manual of the device being set up.

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the universal remote control as described above under Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Press and hold the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror for approx. 5 seconds until the device to be adjusted is activated.

If the device does not become activated, press and hold the button and watch the LED:

- ▷ If the LED lights up continuously, the programming is completed. The device

should become activated when the button is pressed briefly.

- ▷ If the LED flashes for approx. 2 seconds and then lights up continuously, continue the programming procedure beginning with step 4.
4. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g., on the drive.
 5. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
 6. Press the programmed memory button of the universal remote control three times.

The device can be operated when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Reassigning individual programs

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Hold the hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 2 to 8 in/5 to 20 cm from the memory buttons.
3. Press the memory button of the universal remote control.
4. If the LED flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the transmit button on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons when the LED flashes rapidly.

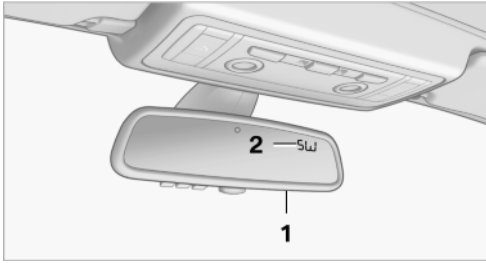
If the LED does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step.

Deleting all stored programs

Press the left and right memory buttons for approx. 20 seconds until the LED flashes rapidly. All stored programs are deleted.

The programs cannot be deleted individually.

Digital compass*



- 1 Adjustment button
- 2 Display

The display shows you the main or secondary compass direction in which you are driving.

Operating concept

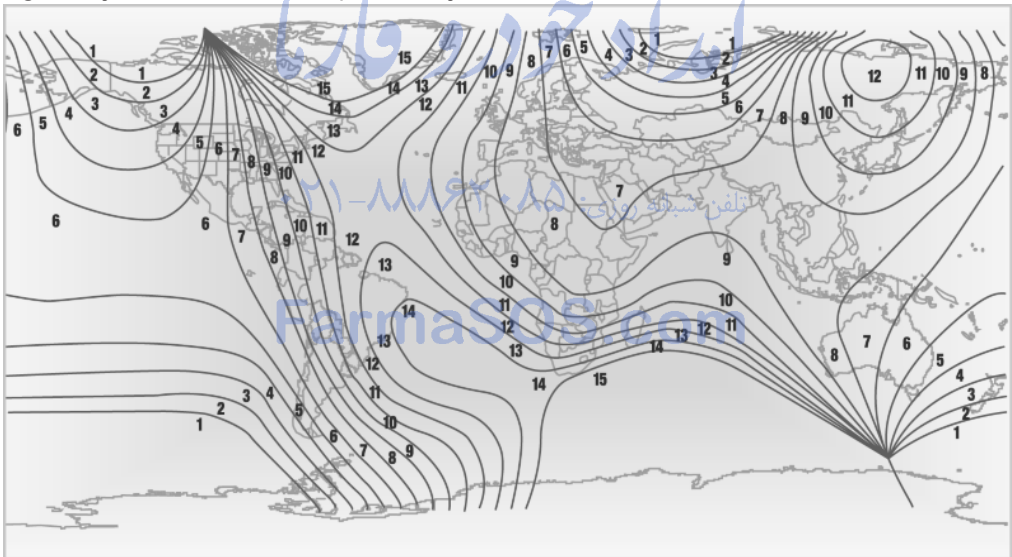
You can call up a number of functions by pressing the adjustment button with a pointed object

such as a ball-point pen. The following adjustment options are displayed one after the other, depending on how long you keep the adjustment button pressed:

- ▶ Press briefly: switch the display on/off.
- ▶ 3 to 6 seconds: set the compass zone.
- ▶ 6 to 9 seconds: calibrate the compass.
- ▶ 9 to 12 seconds: set left-hand/right hand steering.
- ▶ 12 to 15 seconds: set the language.

Setting compass zones

Set the compass zone corresponding to your vehicle's geographic location so that the compass can function correctly; refer to the world map with compass zones.



In order to set the compass zones, press and hold the adjustment button for 3-4 seconds. The number of the compass zone set is shown in the display.

To change the zone setting, briefly press the adjustment button repeatedly until the display shows the number of the compass zone corresponding to your current location.

The compass is operational again after approx. 10 seconds.

Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the following situations:

- ▶ An incorrect compass direction is shown.

- ▷ The cardinal direction displayed does not change even if the direction of travel changes.
- ▷ Not all compass directions are shown.

Procedure

1. Make sure that there are no large metal objects or overhead power lines in the vicinity of your vehicle and that you have enough space to drive in a circle.
2. Set the currently valid compass zone.
3. Ensure that the retractable hardtop is fully closed.
4. Press the adjustment button for 6-7 seconds to call up C. Then drive in at least one complete circle at a maximum speed of 4 mph/7 km/h. If the calibration was successful, the display C is replaced with the cardinal directions.
5. Open the retractable hardtop fully and repeat step 4.

Setting right-hand/left-hand steering

Your digital compass is factory-set to right-hand or left-hand steering, in accordance with your vehicle.

Setting the language

You can set the language of the display:

Press the adjustment button for 12-13 seconds. Briefly press the adjustment button again to switch between English "E" and German "O".

The setting is automatically saved after approx. 10 seconds.

Connecting electrical devices

Sockets

In your BMW, when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on, you can use electrical devices such as a hand lamp, car vacuum cleaner, etc., up to approx. 200 watts at 12 volts, as long as one of the following sockets is avail-

able. Avoid damaging the sockets by attempting to insert plugs of unsuitable shape or size.

Cigarette lighter socket*

Access to socket: remove the lighter from the socket.

Under the center armrest

External audio device, refer to page 108.

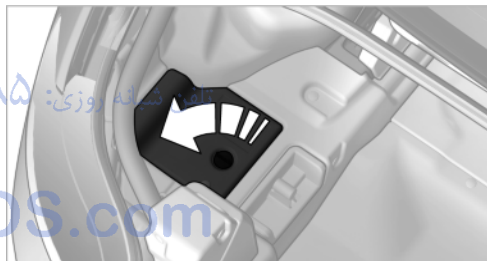
In the passenger footwell*

A socket is located on the left below the glove compartment.

Trunk

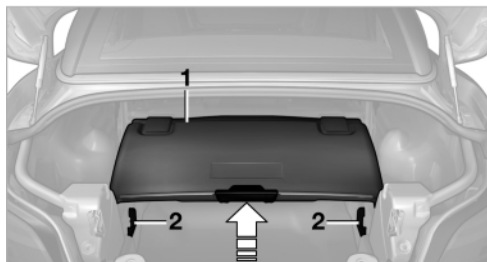
Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following storage spaces can be found in the cargo area:

- ▷ Rubber band* for securing light objects
- ▷ Storage compartment.



To open: turn the lock to the left, see arrow, and fold the cover up.


Enlarging the cargo area



When the hardtop is closed you can enlarge the cargo area:

To do so, press the cargo area partition 1 upward.


Before opening the hardtop, pull the cargo area partition 1 down until it engages in both guides 2.

 Observe before opening and closing the hardtop

- ▷ Before moving the hardtop, ensure that there are no objects on or next to the cargo area partition; otherwise, parts of the hardtop may be damaged.
- ▷ Do not exceed the maximum loading height; refer to the sticker in the trunk showing a line indicating the maximum height.
- ▷ Do not use force to push down the cargo area partition. ◀

The retractable hardtop can only be opened if the cargo area partition is in its lowestmost position and engaged on both sides.

Through-loading opening with integrated transport bag*

 Always secure skis

Always secure transported skis or similar objects with the ski support* as they could otherwise endanger occupants during braking maneuvers and swerving. ◀

The transport bag lets you transport up to two pairs of standard skis safely and cleanly.

With the transport bag you can stow skis up to a length of 5.4 ft/1.70 m. When stowing skis with a length of 5.4 ft/1.70 m, the capacity of the transport bag is reduced as the bag narrows.

Loading

1. Fold the cover down.



2. In the trunk: press the handle up and fold the cover down.



3. Undo the fastener and spread out the transport bag between the seats.

4. Insert the latch plate of the retaining strap into the belt buckle under the transport bag.



5. Load the transport bag. The zipper eases access to the stored items.

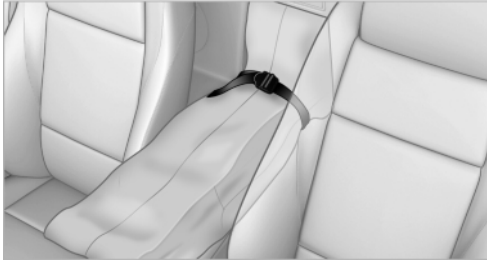
Only place clean skis in the transport bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

Securing cargo

 Securing the transport bag

Secure the transport bag by tightening the retaining strap; otherwise, the contents could

present a source of danger to the passengers, for example during braking or evasive maneuvers. ◀



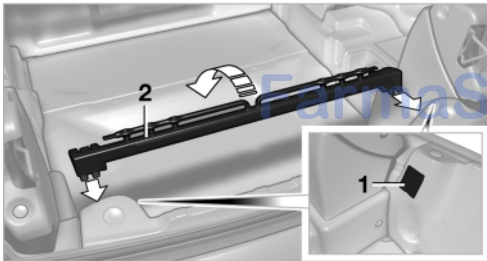
After loading, secure the transport bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

To store the transport bag, perform the steps described for loading in reverse order.

Ski support*

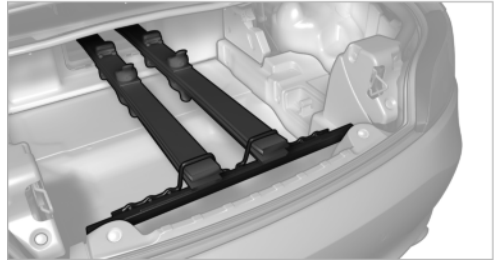
! Always secure skis
Always secure transported skis or similar objects with the ski support* as they could otherwise endanger occupants during braking maneuvers and swerving. ◀

1. Remove both covers 1 with the screwdriver.



2. Attach the ski support 2 and fold it down, see arrow.

3. Pull the fastener up and attach the rear of the ski.



! Prevent damage to the trunk lid
Before closing the trunk, ensure that the trunk lid cannot be damaged by the skis. ◀

Removing the transport bag

The transport bag can be completely removed, e.g., for faster drying or to allow you to use other inserts.

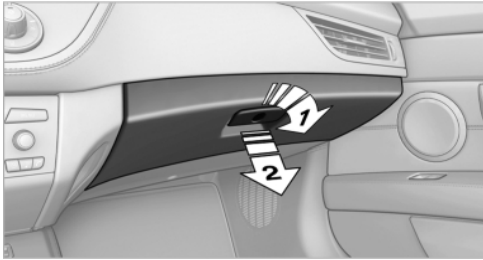


In the trunk: press the handles up and fold the transport bag down fully.

More information on the various inserts available can be obtained from your service center.

Storage compartments


Glove compartment



Opening

Pull the handle, arrow 2.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

 Close the glove compartment again immediately

Close the glove compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents. ◀

Closing

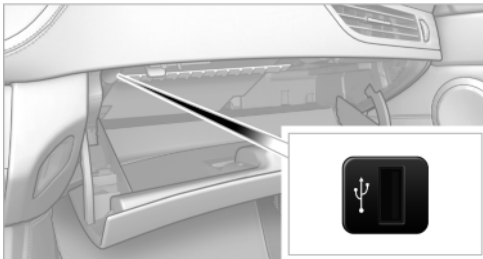
Fold up the cover.

Locking

Lock with a key, arrow 1.

If you hand out the remote control without the [integrated key](#), refer to [page 28](#), such as at a hotel, the glove compartment cannot be unlocked.

USB interface for data transfer



Port for importing and exporting data, such as [music collections](#), refer to [page 156](#), on USB devices.

Observe the following when connecting:

- ▶ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB audio interface.
- ▶ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.
- ▶ Do not connect a USB hard drive.
- ▶ Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

Center armrest

Storage compartment

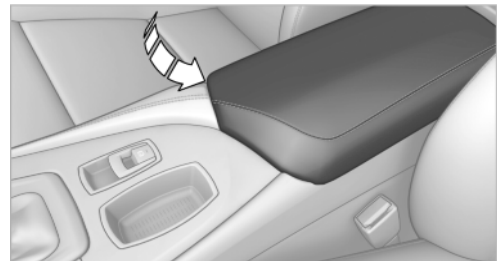
The center armrest contains either two cupholders, a compartment or the cover for the snap-in adapter*, depending on the equipment version.

Details on this mobile phone cradle, refer to [page 174](#). تلفن شبانه ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۸۶۲

Locking the storage compartment*

When you lock the vehicle from the outside, the storage compartment in the center armrest is locked as well.

Opening

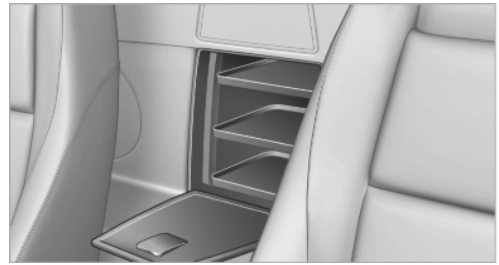


Fold the center armrest up, see arrow.

Connection for an external audio device

You can connect an external audio device such as a CD or MP3 player and play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system:

- ▷ AUX-IN port, refer to page 160.
- ▷ USB audio interface*, refer to page 161.

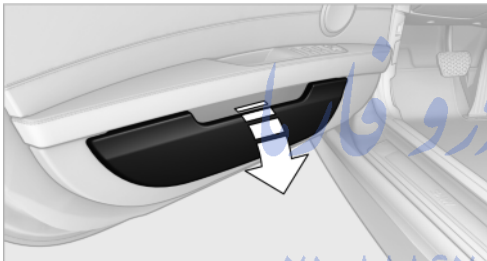


MM095920CMA

Storage compartments inside the vehicle

The following compartments are available, depending on how your vehicle is equipped:

Compartments* in the doors



MM091340CMA

To open: fold open the cover.

Compartment* in the center console

There is an open storage compartment in the center console.



MM091950CMA

To open: pull the handle.

The inserts in the storage compartment can be removed individually.

Removing the storage compartment

The storage compartment can be removed completely to be able to use other inserts, for example.



MM095930CMA

In the trunk: *تلفن شیا*

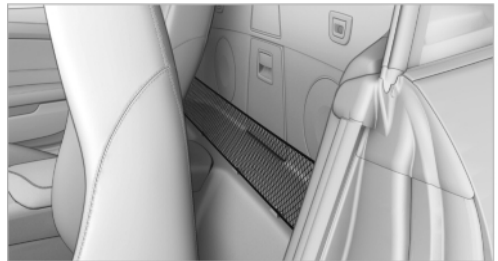
Press the handles up and fold the storage compartment completely down.

More information on the various inserts available can be obtained from your service center.

Storage compartment* in the partition

Lateral storage shelf behind the seats

This space can be used to store briefcases, for example.




MM091770CMA




Observe when loading the lateral storage shelf

- ▷ When loading the lateral storage shelf, do not move both seats all the way forward while moving them to their uppermost position and leaning the backrests forward. Otherwise, the seats could hit and damage the seal on the windshield and the sun visor.
- ▷ Only transport light and small objects on the lateral storage shelf; otherwise, braking maneuvers and swerving may lead to a safety hazard due to objects flying about the passenger compartment. Only transport heavy luggage in the trunk if it has been appropriately secured. ◀

Cupholders*

 Shatter-proof containers and no hot drinks

Use light and shatter-proof containers and do not transport hot drinks. Otherwise, there is the increased danger of injury in an accident. ◀

 Unsuitable containers
Do not forcefully push unsuitable containers into the cupholders. This may result in damage. ◀

In the center armrest



The cupholders are located in the center armrest.

Attachable cupholder*

Attaching to the center console



Mount the cupholder onto the center console so that it snaps into place.

Storing in the glove compartment

Insert the cupholder into the holder in the glove compartment.

امداد خودرو پارسیا

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Driving tips

- This section provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Things to remember when driving

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to be broken in to adjust to each other.

The following instructions will help achieve a long vehicle life and good economy.

Engine and differential

Always obey the official speed limits.

Up to approx. 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds but do not exceed:

- ▷ 4,500 rpm or 100 mph/160 km/h.

Do not drive with full-throttle operation, and do not use the transmission's kickdown mode or Launch Control.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial breaking-in period.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive cautiously during this break-in period.

Clutch

The clutch requires an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to function at an optimal level.

During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same breaking in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

General driving notes

Ground clearance



Limited ground clearance

Note that the Z4 sDrive35 has limited ground clearance, for instance when driving into underground parking garages or over obstacles. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged. ◀

Closing the trunk lid



Drive with the trunk lid closed

Only operate the vehicle with the trunk lid closed; otherwise, exhaust fumes could enter the passenger compartment. ◀

If the vehicle must be driven with the trunk lid open:

1. Close all windows.
2. Greatly increase the air flow rate of the air conditioner or automatic climate control.

Hot exhaust system




Hot exhaust system

High temperatures are generated in the exhaust system.

Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that flammable materials, e. g. hay, leaves, grass, etc. do not come in contact with the hot exhaust system during driving, while in idle position mode, or when parked. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious personal injury as well as property damage.

Do not touch hot exhaust pipes; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned. ◀

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle


 Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

It is not recommended to use mobile phones, such as mobile phones without a direct connection to an external aerial in the vehicle's passenger compartment. Otherwise, the vehicle electronics and mobile communication devices can interfere with each other. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation generated during transmission will be discharged from the vehicle interior. ◀

Hydroplaning


On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

 Hydroplaning
When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce your speed to prevent hydroplaning. ◀

Driving through water

Drive through calm water only if it is not deeper than 9.8 inches/25 cm and at this height, no faster than walking speed, up to 6 mph/10 km/h.

 Adhere to water depth and speed limitations

Do not exceed this water depth and walking speed; otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged. ◀

Braking safely

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations when this is necessary.

The vehicle maintains steering responsiveness. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated in this process helps dry the brake discs and pads.


In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.


Hills


Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat, resulting in a reduction in the brake system efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if necessary.

Downshifting in manual mode of the **automatic transmission**, refer to page 57.

 Avoid load on the brakes
Avoid placing excessive load on the brake system. Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure. ◀

 Do not drive in neutral
Never drive with the transmission in neutral, with the engine switched off or with the clutch depressed; otherwise, you will have neither the braking action of the engine or nor its power assistance when braking or steering. ◀

 No objects in the area around the pedals

Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area of pedal movement and impair pedal operation. ◀

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.

Corrosion occurs when the minimum pressure that must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the discs is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake discs, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that generally cannot be corrected.

Condensation under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Therefore, traces of condensed water under the vehicle are normal.

Loading



Overloading the vehicle

To avoid exceeding the approved carrying capacity of the tires, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. This could result in a sudden loss of tire inflation pressure. ◀



Secure heavy objects

Never transport unsecured heavy or hard objects in the passenger compartment, as they could be thrown around and pose a safety hazard to the vehicle's occupants during abrupt braking or evasive maneuvers. ◀



No fluids in the trunk

Make sure that fluids do not leak into the trunk; otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged. ◀

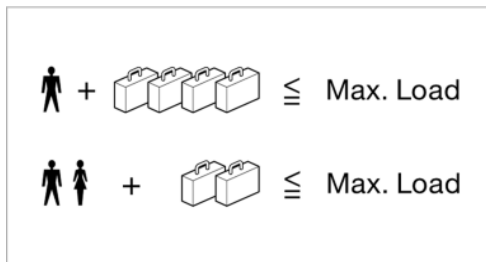
Determining the load limit



MM09191CMAA

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:
 - ▷ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs: 1,400 lbs minus 750 lbs = 650 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load

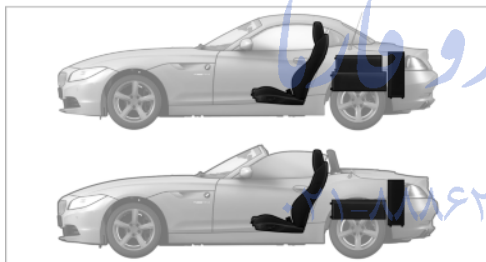


The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing cargo

Trunk



- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward and as low as possible, ideally directly behind the trunk separating wall.
- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.

Loading with the hardtop open

Before opening the hardtop, fold down the cargo area partition and make sure the trunk is loaded correctly; otherwise, parts of the hardtop could be damaged.◀

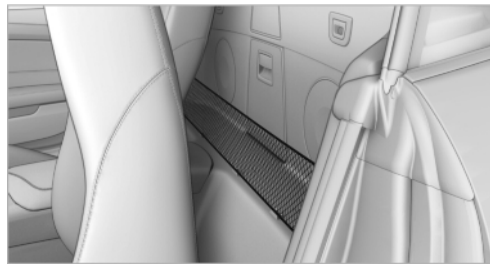
[Fold down the cargo area partition, refer to page 39.](#)

Lateral storage shelf

Loading the lateral storage shelf

When loading the lateral storage shelf, do not move both seats all the way forward while moving them to their uppermost position and leaning the backrests forward. Otherwise, the

seats could hit and damage the seal on the windshield and the sun visor.◀



Light and small objects can be stored on the lateral storage shelf.

Securing cargo

Trunk

Use retaining straps, a luggage net* or draw straps* to secure small and lightweight items.

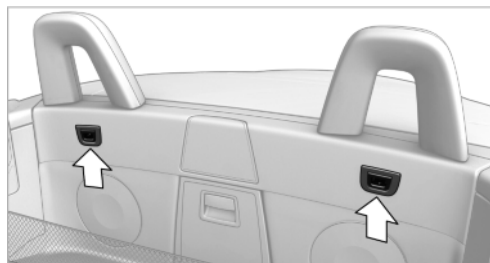
Lateral storage shelf

You can obtain cargo straps* from your service center. Four lashing eyes are provided behind the seats for attaching the cargo straps.

Adhere to the information included with the cargo straps.

Lashing eyes on the lateral storage shelf

Top:



Bottom:



MM093370MM

Saving fuel

General information

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular [maintenance, refer to page 202](#), can have an influence on fuel consumption and on the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors or rear-mounted luggage racks after use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close both windows

An open window causes higher air resistance and thus increases fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct the [tire inflation pressure, refer to page 189](#), at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Driving smoothly and looking ahead reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid high engine speeds

Use 1st gear to get the vehicle in motion. Beginning with 2nd gear, accelerate rapidly. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and coast to a halt in the highest applicable gear.

On a downhill slope, take your foot off the accelerator and coast in a suitable gear.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Fuel savings are achieved after the vehicle is switched off for only approx. 4 seconds.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as the automatic climate control require a large amount of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Therefore, switch off these functions if they are not actually needed.

Have maintenance carried out

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle economy and operating life. Have the maintenance carried out by your service center.

Please also note the [BMW Maintenance System](#), refer to [page 202](#).

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شماره روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Navigation

- This chapter contains various examples of how the navigation system can guide you reliably to your destination.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

Navigation system*

General information

The navigation system can determine the precise position of the vehicle, with the aid of satellites and vehicle sensors, and can reliably guide you to every entered destination.



Entries in stationary vehicle

Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Failure to take to this precaution can place you in violation of the law and put vehicle occupants and other road users in danger. ◀

Navigation data

Information on navigation data

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Navigation system version" information is displayed on the data version.

General information

Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

Navigation data and authorization codes are available from your service center.

- ▷ Depending on the data volume, a data update may take several hours.
- ▷ Update during the trip to preserve battery.
- ▷ The basic navigation is available during the trip.
- ▷ The status of the update can be viewed.
- ▷ The system restarts after the update.
- ▷ The data carrier with the navigation data can be removed after the update is complete.

Updating the navigation data

Inserting the navigation DVD

1. Insert the navigation DVD into the DVD player with the labeled side facing up.
2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.
3. Enter the authorization code of the navigation DVD and change the DVD if needed.

If the trip is interrupted, follow the instructions on the Control Display and restart the update if necessary.

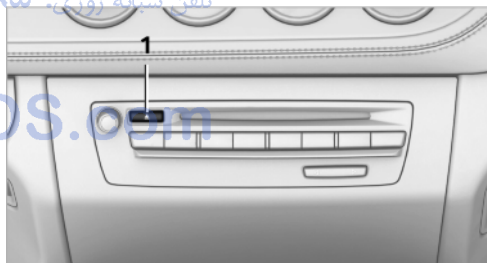
Viewing the status

1. Open "Options".
2. "Navigation update"

Removing navigation DVD

1.  Press button 1.

The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.



2. Remove the DVD.


Destination entry

At a glance

In entering your destination you can select from the following options:

- ▷ Enter the destination manually, see below.
- ▷ Select the destination from the address book, refer to page 123.
- ▷ Last destinations, refer to page 124.
- ▷ Special destinations, refer to page 124.
- ▷ Enter the destination via the map, refer to page 126.
- ▷ Select the home address, refer to page 124.
- ▷ Enter*, refer to page 126, the destination by voice.
- ▷ Enter the destination via BMW Assist*, refer to page 125.

You can also store, refer to page 22, a navigation destination on the programmable memory buttons.

 Entries in stationary vehicle – Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Failure to take to this precaution can place you in violation of the law and put vehicle occupants and other road users in danger.◀

Manual destination entry

General information


The system supports you in entering street names and house numbers by automatically completing the entry and providing entry comparisons, refer to page 23.

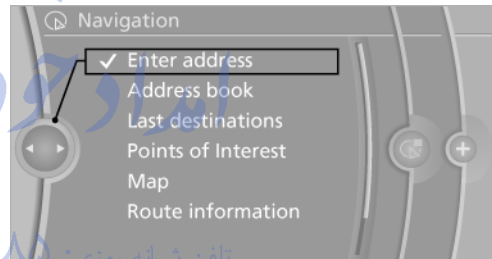
Stored town/city and street names can be called up quickly.

The system also supports you with the following features:

- ▷ If the existing entries should not be changed, the entries for the state/province and town/city can be skipped.
- ▷ Destination guidance is started to the town/city center if no street is entered.

Entering a state/province

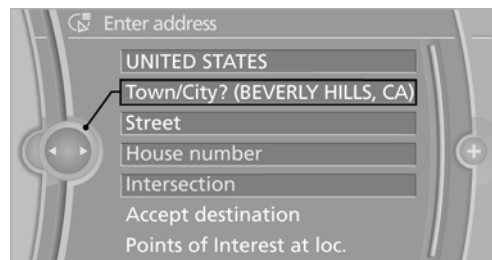
1.  Press the button.
2. "Navigation"
3. "Enter address"



4. Select "State/Province" or the displayed state/province.

Entering a town/city

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.



2. Select letters, if necessary.
To delete letters:
 - ▷ To delete individual letters:

Turn the controller to select |← , and then press the controller.

- ▶ To delete all letters:

Turn the controller to select |← , and then press the controller for an extended period.

To enter spaces:

- ▶  Select the symbol.


The list is narrowed down further with each entry.

3. Move the controller to the right.
4. Select the name of the town/city from the list.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

1. Change to the list of town/city names.
2. Highlight the town/city. A preview map is displayed on the split screen.
3. Select the town/city.

Entering the postal code

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.
2.  Select the symbol.
3. Select the numbers.
4. Change to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.
5. Highlight the postal code. A preview map is displayed on the split screen.
6. Select the postal code.

Entering a street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter a street and intersection as you did the town/city.

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

If there are several streets with the same name:

1. Change to the list of street names.
2. Highlight the street. A preview map is displayed on the split screen.

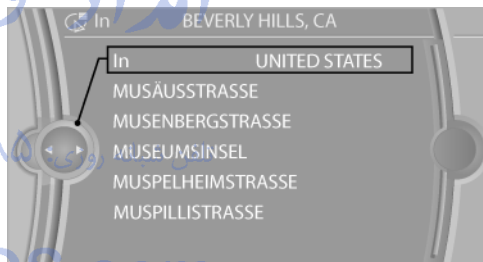
3. Select the street.

Entering a street without a destination town/city

In this case, all streets of the same name in the designated state/province are offered. The associated town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, this entry can be negated. This could be helpful in instances where the street does not exist in the entered town/city because it belongs to another suburb, for example.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
4. Change to the list of street names.
5. Select "In" with the state/province currently displayed.



6. Select the letters.
7. Change to the list of street names.
8. Highlight the street. A preview map is displayed on the split screen.
9. Select the street.

Entering a house number

Any house number stored in the navigation data for the street can be entered.

1. "House number"
2. Select the numbers.
3. Change to the list of house numbers.
4. Select a house number or range of house numbers.

Starting destination guidance after entering the destination

1. "Accept destination"
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."
- ▷ Adjust, refer to page 130, the "Route preference".
- ▷ Adjust, refer to page 124, the "Points of Interest at loc."

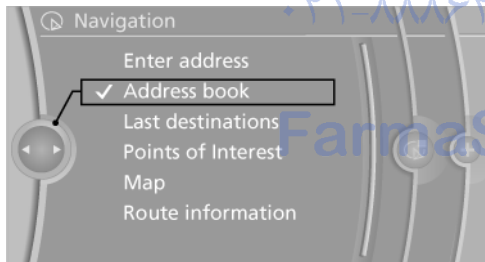
Address book

Create contacts, refer to page 176.

Selecting a destination from the address book

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"

Contacts with addresses are displayed if these have been checked as destinations. If the contacts with addresses from the mobile phone* are not displayed, they first need to be [checked as destinations](#), refer to page 177.



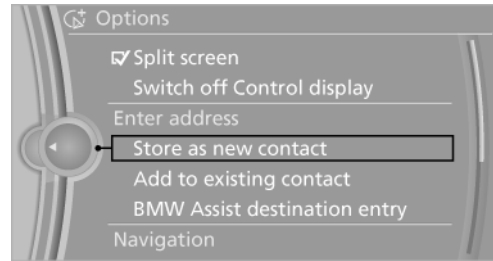
3. Select a contact in the list or, if desired, with "A-Z search".
4. If necessary, select "Business address" or "Home address".

Storing the destination in the address book

After entering the destination, store the destination in the address book.

1. Open "Options".

2. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"

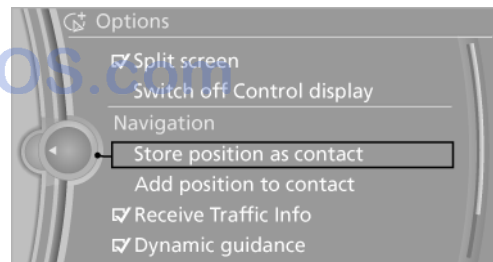


3. Select an existing contact, if available.
4. Select "Business address" or "Home address".
5. Enter "Last name" and, if necessary, "First name".
6. "Store in vehicle"

Storing the position

The current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store position as contact" or "Add position to contact"



4. Depending on the selection, select an existing contact from the list or the type of address and enter the last and first name.
5. "Store in vehicle"

Editing or deleting an address

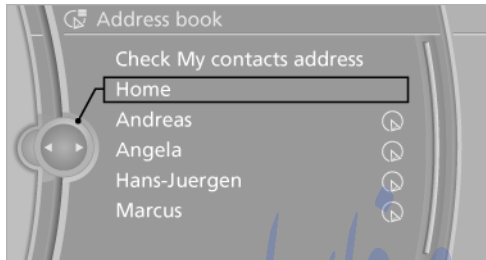
1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. Highlight the entry.

4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit in Contacts" or "Delete entry"

Using the home address as the destination

The home address must be stored. Specify the home address, refer to page 176.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. "Home"



4. "Start guidance"

Last destinations

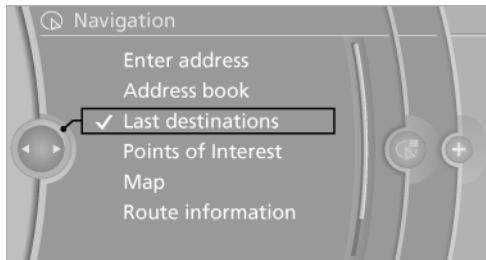
At a glance

The destinations previously entered are stored automatically.

These destinations can be called up and used as a destination for destination guidance.

Calling up the last destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"



3. Select the destination.
4. "Start guidance"

Editing the destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit destination"

Deleting the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or "Delete all last destinations"

Special destinations

Opening the search for special destinations

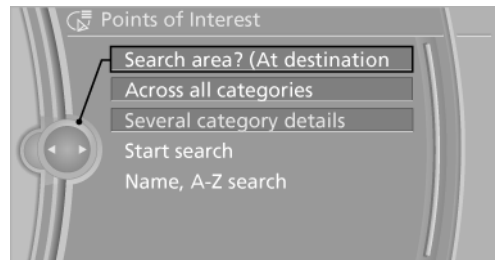
Selection of special destinations, e.g., hotels and tourist attractions.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"

Narrow the search for special destinations by specifying the location and category.

Position of special destinations

1. "Search area"



2. Select the location where the system is to search for the special destination:
 - ▷ "At current location"
 - ▷ "At destination"

- ▷ "At a different destination"
- ▷ "Along route"

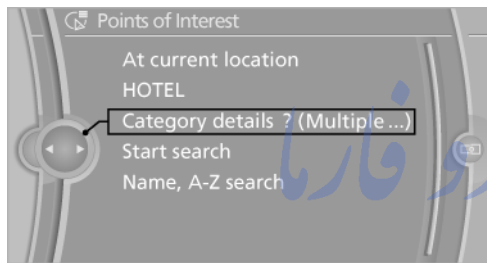
Special destinations category

1. "Category"
2. Select "All" or the specific category of the special destination, e.g., hotels or restaurants.

Category details

For some special destinations, additional details can be displayed that are available in the navigation data, e.g., an Italian-style restaurant.

"Category details"



Starting the search for special destinations

1. "Start search"
2. A list of the special destinations is displayed.
 - ▷ "At current location"

The special destinations are listed according to their distance from the current location and are displayed with a directional arrow pointing to the destination.

- ▷ "At destination", "At a different destination", "Along route"

The special destinations are listed according to their distance from the location where the search is being performed.

- ▷ Destinations of the selected category are displayed in the map view as symbols. The display depends on the scale of the map and the category.

3. Highlight the special destination. The destination is displayed in the preview map.
4. Select a special destination.
5. Select the symbol.
6. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."
 - If a phone number is available, a connection can be established if necessary.

Destination entry via BMW Assist*

A connection is [established, refer to page 180](#), to the Concierge service.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Open "Options".
4. "BMW Assist dest. entry"

Entering special destinations by name

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"
3. "Name, A-Z search"
4. Enter the letters.

Depending on the distance, the search may take some time. The list can contain a maximum of 100 entries.

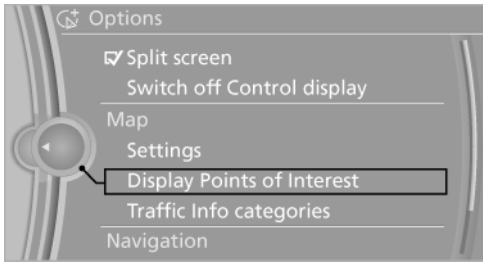
5. Change to the list of special destinations.
6. Highlight the special destination. The destination is displayed in the preview map.
7. Select a special destination.
8. Select the symbol.
9. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."

Displaying special destinations in the map

To display symbols of the special destinations in the map view:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".

4. "Display Points of Interest"



5. Select the setting.

Destination entry by map

If you only know the location of the town or street, you can enter the destination using the map.

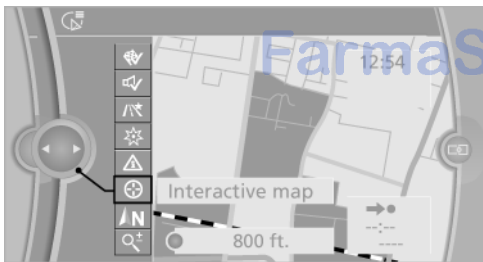
Opening the map

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

The map section is displayed. The map shows the current position of the vehicle.

Selecting the destination

1. "Interactive map"



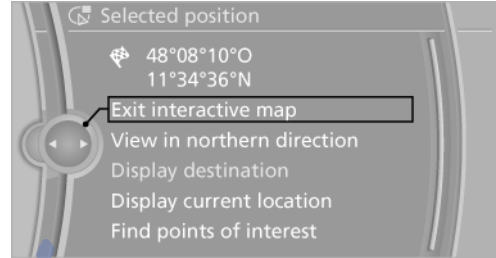
2. Select the destination with crosshairs.
 - ▷ To change the scale: turn the controller.
 - ▷ To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
 - ▷ To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

Specifying the street

If the system cannot recognize a street, it displays a street name in the vicinity or the coordinates of the destination.

Additional functions

Additional functions are made available on the interactive map by pressing the controller.



- ▷ Select a symbol: "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."
- ▷ "Exit interactive map": return to the map view.
- ▷ Select "View in northern direction".
- ▷ "Display destination": the map section around the destination is displayed.
- ▷ "Display current location": the map section around your current location is displayed.
- ▷ "Find points of interest": the search for special destinations is started, refer to page 124.

Destination entry by voice*

General information

Instructions for [voice activation system](#), refer to page 24.

During destination entry, you can switch between voice entry and entry via iDrive at any time. To do so, reactivate the voice activation system if necessary.

You can have the available spoken instructions read out loud via: ›Voice commands‹

Saying the entries


- ▶ Countries, towns and cities, streets, and intersections can be said as whole words or spelled in the **system language**, refer to [page 68](#).

Example: to enter a destination in a US state as a whole word, the system language must be English.

- ▶ The town/city, street, and house number can be said* as a single sentence.
- ▶ Spell the entry if the spoken language and the system language differ.
- ▶ Say the letters smoothly, and avoid exaggerating the pronunciation and inserting lengthy pauses between the letters.

Entering* the address

The methods of entry depend on the navigation data in use and the country and language settings.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹
3. Wait for a request from the system.
4. Say the town or city, street and house number in a single sentence.
5. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.
6. If necessary, individually name the separate components of the address, e.g., the town/city.

Entering a town/city

The town/city can be spelled or entered as a complete word*.

1. ›City‹ or ›Spell city‹
2. Wait for the system to prompt you for the town/city.
3. Say the name of the town/city, or name at least the first three letters.

Depending on the entry, up to 20 towns/cities may be suggested.

4. Select a location:
 - ▶ Select a recommended town/city: ›Yes‹.
 - ▶ Select a different town/city: ›New entry‹.
 - ▶ Select an entry: ›Entry ... ‹, for instance, entry 2.
 - ▶ Spell an entry: ›Spell city‹.

Identical-sounding towns/cities that cannot be distinguished by the system are compiled in a separate list and shown as a town/city followed by three dots.

If necessary, select this entry with ›Yes‹. Then select the desired town/city from that list.

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive: turn the controller until the town/city is selected and press the controller.

Entering a street or intersection

A street or intersection is entered in the same way as you would enter a town/city.

Entering a house number

House numbers can be entered up to the number 999 999:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.
Say each digit separately.
3. ›Yes‹ to confirm the house number.
4. ›Accept destination‹

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Adding further intermediate destinations

›Add as another destination‹

Further intermediate destinations can be added.


Storing a destination

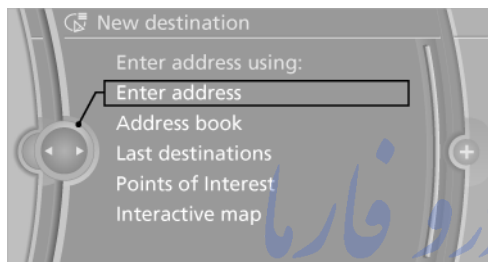
The destination is automatically added to the list of last destinations.

Planning a trip

New trip

Multiple intermediate destinations can be entered for a trip.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left if necessary.
4.  "Guidance"
5. "Enter new destination"
6. Select the type of destination entry.

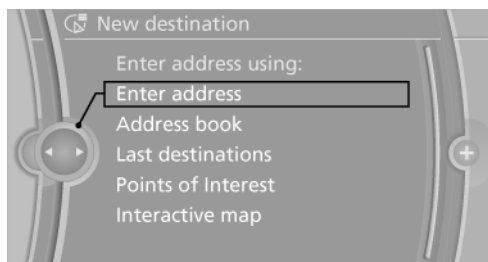


7. Enter the intermediate destination.
8. "Start guidance"

Entering further intermediate destinations

A maximum of 30 intermediate destinations can be entered for a trip.

1. "Enter new destination"
2. Select the type of destination entry.



3. Enter the intermediate destination.
4. "Add as another dest."

5. "Reposition dest. in the trip": select the location where the intermediate destination is to be inserted.

Starting the trip

After all intermediate destinations have been entered:

"Start guidance"

Storing a trip

Up to 30 created trips can be stored in the trip list. If necessary, delete existing trips to be able to store new trips.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store trip"
3. Enter the letters.
4. "OK"

The trip is stored in the trip list under the entered name.

Starting a stored trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. "Start guidance"

Changing trips

Changing the trip direction

Intermediate destinations can be displayed in reverse order after destination guidance is started.

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reverse order of trip dest."

Rearranging the intermediate destinations

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip destinations"

4. Select an intermediate destination.
5. "Reposition dest. in the trip"

Deleting an intermediate destination

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip destinations"
4. Select an intermediate destination.
5. "Delete dest. in the trip"

Deleting a trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete all trips" or "Delete trip"

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Destination guidance


Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select the destination.
4. "Accept destination"
5. "Start guidance"

The route is displayed on the Control Display after it is calculated.

The distance to the destination/intermediate destination and the estimated time of arrival are displayed in the map view.

Terminating destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. "Stop guidance"

Continuing destination guidance

If the destination was not reached during the last trip, destination guidance can be resumed.

"Resume guidance"

Route criteria

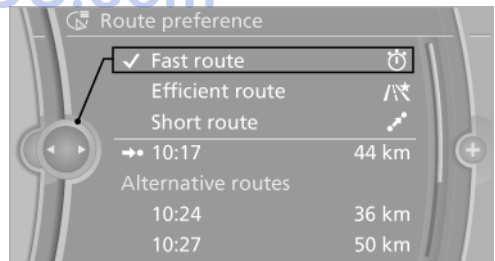
General information

- ▷ The route calculated can be influenced by selecting certain criteria.
- ▷ The route criteria can be changed as often as necessary when the destination is entered and during destination guidance.

- ▷ Road types, such as highways or curvy roads, are part of the navigation data and are taken into consideration when planning a route. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.
- ▷ The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing the route criteria

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route preference"
4. Select the criterion:
 - ▷ "Fast route": time-optimized route, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads.
 - ▷ "Efficient route": optimized combination of the fastest and shortest route.
 - ▷ "Short route": short distance, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be.
 - ▷ "Alternative routes": other suggested alternative routes while destination guidance is active.



5. Specify additional criteria for the route, if necessary:
 - ▷ "Avoid highways": highways are avoided wherever possible.
 - ▷ "Avoid toll roads": toll roads are avoided wherever possible.

- ▷ "Avoid ferries": ferries are avoided where possible.

The setting applies to the current route and to the planning of future routes.

Dynamic destination guidance

The route is automatically changed in the event of traffic obstructions.

- ▷ The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route.
- ▷ Traffic bulletins continue to be displayed on the map.
- ▷ Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that you travel through the traffic obstruction.

Activating/deactivating dynamic destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Dynamic guidance"

Route

Various views of the route are available during destination guidance.

- ▷ List of streets and towns/cities.
- ▷ Map view, refer to page 132.

Displaying a list of streets or towns/cities on the route

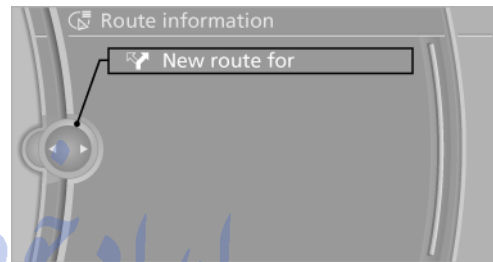
When destination guidance is started, a list of the streets and towns/cities on the route is displayed. The driving distances and traffic bulletins are displayed for each route section.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. Highlight a section. The route section is displayed on the split screen.

Bypassing a section of the route

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for:"



4. Turn the controller. Enter the desired number of miles.
5. Press the controller.

Resuming the original route


If the route section should no longer be bypassed:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Remove blocking"

Gas station recommendation

The remaining range is calculated and gas stations along the route are recommended.


1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Recommended refuel"
A list of the gas stations is displayed.
4. Highlight a gas station. The position of the gas station is shown on the split screen.
5. Select the gas station.



6.  Select the symbol.
7. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."

Destination guidance through voice instructions

Switching spoken instructions on/off

Voice instructions can be switched on or off during destination guidance.


1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left if necessary.
4.  Select the symbol.

Symbol	Meaning
	Spoken instructions are switched on
	Spoken instructions are switched off

Saving the spoken instructions on the programmable memory buttons

The function for switching the spoken instructions on/off can be [stored on a programmable memory button, refer to page 22](#), for quick access.

Repeating a spoken instruction

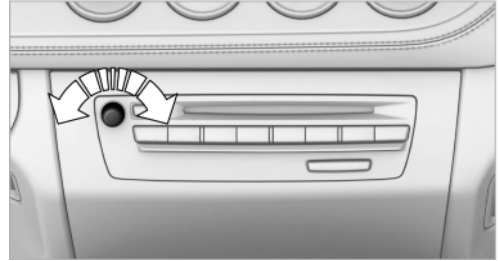
1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left if necessary.
4.  Highlight the symbol.
5. Press the controller twice.

Volume of spoken instructions

The volume can be adjusted only while a voice instruction is being issued.

1. Have the last voice instruction repeated, if necessary.

2. Turn the volume button while giving an instruction until the desired volume is set.



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Map view

General information

Your location is indicated on the map.

After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.










The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.






Opening the map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

Menu bar

A menu bar is displayed for operation. To select the symbols on the menu bar, move the controller to the left if necessary.

Symbol	Function
 	Starting/ending destination guidance
 	Switching spoken instructions on/off
  	Changing the route criteria
	Searching for special destinations
	Displaying traffic bulletins



Symbol	Function
	Opening the interactive map
   AN	Selecting the map view
	Changing the scale

Information in the map view


- ▷ Time, entertainment source, sound output, scale, map orientation.
- ▷ Distance to destination/intermediate destination, estimated time of arrival, if destination guidance is active.
- ▷ Any traffic obstructions are highlighted in color.

To show/hide information on the map:
Press the controller.


Viewing the map

1.   **AN** Select the symbol.
2. Select a setting:
 - ▷ "View facing north"
 - ▷ "View in dir. of travel"
 - ▷ "Perspective view"
 - ▷ "Arrow display"
3. Press the controller.

Changing the map section

-  Select the interactive map.
 - ▷ To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
 - ▷ To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

Changing the scale

1.  Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller to adjust the scale.

Automatically scaled map scale


In the map view facing north, turn the controller in any direction until AUTO is displayed as the map scale. The map shows the entire range from your location to the destination.

Settings for the map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. Adjust the settings to optimize the map view:
 - ▷ "Day/night mode"
Select and create the necessary settings depending on the light conditions. If "Traffic situation/gray map" is activated, this setting is disregarded.
 - ▷ "Satellite images"
Depending on availability and resolution, satellite images* are displayed at scales of approx. 1 mile to 600 miles/2 km to 1,000 km.
 - ▷ "Perspective view in 3D"
Displays a spatial view. Prominent areas that are contained in the navigation data are displayed on the map in 3D.
 - ▷ "Traffic situation/gray map"
The map is optimized for displaying traffic bulletins. Symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

Map view for split screen

The map view can be selected for the split screen independently from the main screen.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Split screen"
 The split screen is switched on.
3. Tilt the controller to the right until the split screen contents are selected.
4. Select the map view.
 - ▷ "Arrow display"
 - ▷ "Map facing north"
 - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
 - ▷ "Map view with perspective"
 - ▷ "Exit ramp view"

Changing the scale

1. Tilt the controller to the right until the split screen contents are selected.
2. Turn the controller.

Traffic bulletins*

At a glance

- ▷ Display the traffic bulletins from radio stations that broadcast the TI (Traffic Information) of a traffic information service. Information on traffic obstructions and hazards is updated continuously.

Certain BMW models equipped with navigation have the capability to display real-time traffic information. If your system has this capability the following additional terms and conditions apply:

An End-User shall no longer have the right to use the Traffic Data in the event that the End-User is in material breach of the terms and conditions contained herein.

A. Total Traffic Network, a division of Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. ("Total Traffic Network") holds the rights to the traffic incident data and RDS-TMC network through which it is delivered. You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless BMW of North America, LLC. ("BMW NA") and Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc (and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and/or (c) any unauthorized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

B. Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network, BMW NA, and their suppliers make no representations about

content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed.

C. The licensed material is provided to licensee "as is," and "where is". Total Traffic Network, including, but not limited to, any and all third party providers of any of the licensed material, expressly disclaims, to the fullest extent permitted by law, all warranties or representations with respect to the licensed material (including, without limitation, that the licensed material will be error-free, will operate without interruption or that the traffic data will be accurate), express, implied or statutory, including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement fitness for a particular purpose, or those arising from a course of dealing or usage of trade.

D. Neither Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc. or BMW NA will be liable to you for any indirect, special, consequential, exemplary, or incidental damages (including, without limitation, lost revenues, anticipated revenues, or profits relating to the same) arising from any claim relating directly or indirectly to use of the traffic data, and even if Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc., or BMW NA are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so those particular limitations may not apply to you.


- ▷ The traffic information is displayed in the map.

Switching the reception on/off

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Receive Traffic Info"


Open the traffic bulletins

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

3. Move the controller to the left if necessary.
4.  "Traffic Info"
5. Select the desired traffic bulletins.

First the traffic bulletins on the planned route are displayed. The traffic bulletins are sorted by their distance from the current position of the vehicle.

Additional information can be displayed for some traffic bulletins:

1.  Select the symbol.
Additional information is displayed.
2. Exit the menu:
Move the controller to the left.

Traffic bulletins on the map

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic situation/gray map"

The Control Display changes to a black and white display. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins. The day/night mode is disregarded in this setting. The symbols for the special destinations are not displayed.

Symbols in the map view

Depending on the scale of the map and the location of the traffic obstruction along the route, the symbols for the traffic obstructions are displayed.

Additional information in the map view

Depending on the map scale, a traffic obstruction's length, direction, and impact are displayed in the map using triangles or gray bars along the calculated route. The colors displayed depend on the information sent by the traffic information service.

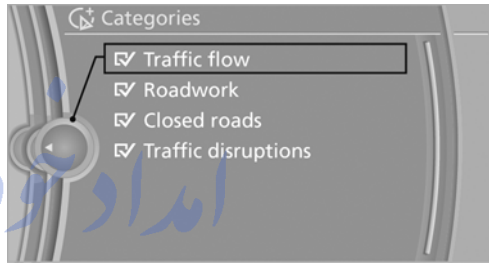
- ▷ Red: traffic congestion
- ▷ Orange: stop-and-go traffic
- ▷ Yellow: heavy traffic

- ▷ Green: clear roads
- ▷ Gray: general traffic bulletins such as road construction

Filtering traffic bulletins

You can set which traffic bulletins appear on the map.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Traffic Info categories"
5. Select the desired category.



Traffic bulletins of the selected category are displayed.

- ▷ Traffic bulletins on incidents along the route are always displayed.
- ▷ For your own safety, traffic bulletins that notify you of potentially dangerous situations, such as wrong-way drivers, cannot be hidden.

Traffic bulletins during destination guidance

The system behavior depends on whether "Dynamic guidance", refer to [page 131](#), is selected or not.

During destination guidance, traffic obstructions on the route are taken into consideration.

Information on sources of great danger, such as wrong-way drivers, is displayed regardless of the setting.

Displaying traffic obstructions

When the navigation system receives a traffic obstruction message and "Dynamic guidance"

is not selected, you will be shown certain information, such as the length of the traffic congestion, when you are approx. 30 miles/50 km away from the traffic obstruction. The last possible detour exit is indicated before you reach it.

This information is displayed even if you have called up another application on the Control Display.

Selecting a detour

📍 "Detour"

"Dynamic guidance" is activated for the current destination guidance.

Dynamic route planning

When "Dynamic guidance" is selected, the route is changed automatically in the event of a traffic obstruction. The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route.

Depending on the road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the newly calculated route may lead through the traffic obstruction.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲-۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

What to do if...

- ▷ The current transmission position cannot be displayed?

The vehicle is located in an unrecognized region, is in a poor reception area, or the system is currently determining the position. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky.

- ▷ The destination without street information is not used for route guidance?

When city has been input, no downtown can be determined. Input any street in the selected city and start destination guidance.

- ▷ The destination is not used for route guidance?

The destination data are not contained in the navigation data. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.

- ▷ Letters for destination input cannot be selected?

The stored data do not contain the data of the destination. Select a goal that is as close as possible to the original.

- ▷ Is the map displayed in shades of gray?

If "Traffic situation/gray map" is activated, the Control Display changes to a black and white display. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins.

- ▷ Spoken instructions are no longer output during route guidance in front of intersections?

The area has not yet been fully recorded, or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Entertainment

- This chapter helps assure your enjoyment when receiving radio stations and playing CDs, DVDs and tracks from the music collection.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبکه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Tone

Tone

General information

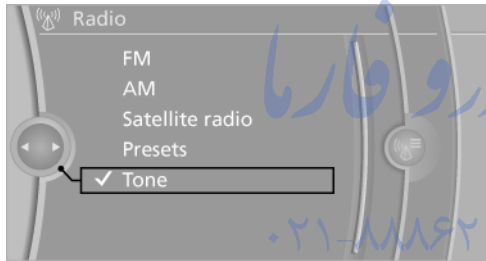
The sound settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Treble, bass, balance, and fader

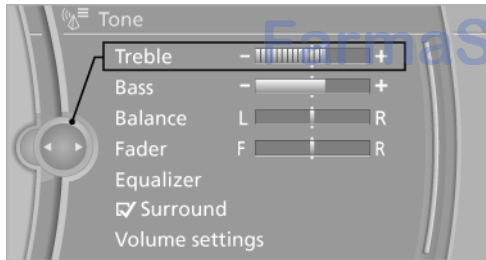
- ▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution.
- ▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution.

Setting treble, bass, balance, and fader

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"



3. Select the desired tone settings.



4. To adjust: turn the controller.
5. To store: press the controller.

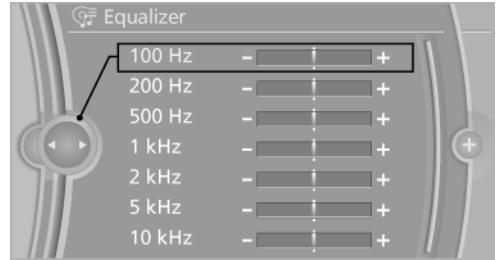
Equalizer*

Setting for individual audio frequency ranges.

Adjusting the equalizer

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"

2. "Tone"
3. "Equalizer"
4. Select the desired setting.



5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Multi-channel playback, surround*

Choose between stereo and multi-channel playback, surround.

Setting multi-channel playback, surround

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Surround"



Multi-channel playback, surround, is simulated when playing back an audio track in stereo.

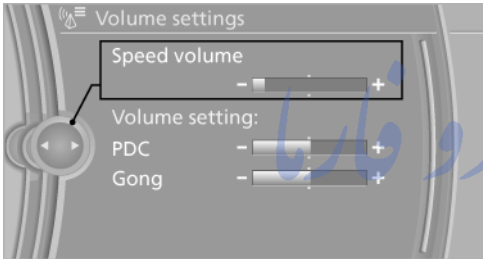
Multi-channel playback is automatically activated or deactivated, depending on the audio track selected.

Volume

- ▷ "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control.
- ▷ "PDC": volume of the PDC signal* compared to the entertainment sound output.
- ▷ "Gong": volume of the signal, such as the safety belt reminder, compared to the entertainment sound output.

Adjusting the volume

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired volume setting.



5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

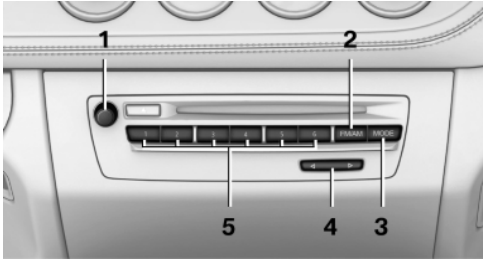
Resetting the tone settings

All tone settings can be reset to the default setting.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

Radio

Controls

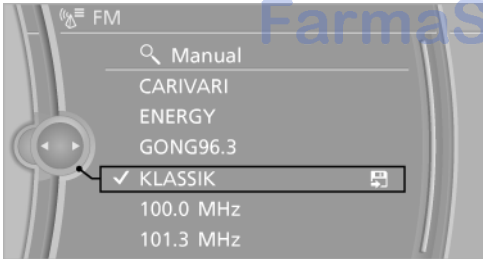


- 1 Volume, on/off
- 2 Change wave band
- 3 Change entertainment sources
- 4 Change station/track
- 5 Programmable memory buttons

AM/FM station

Selecting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.



All saved stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing the station

Turn the controller and press it

or



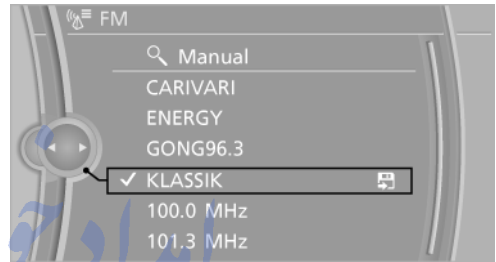
Press the button

or

Press the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 12.

Storing a station

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Highlight the desired station.



4. Press the controller for an extended period.
5. Select the desired memory location.

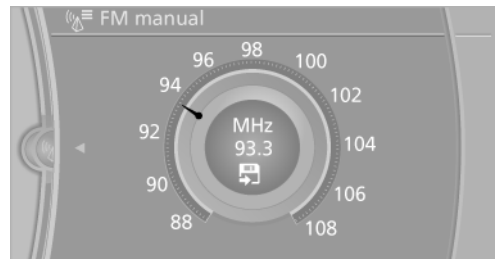
The stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

The stations can also be stored on the [programmable memory buttons](#), refer to page 22.

Selecting a station manually

Station selection via the frequency.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Manual"
4. To select the frequency: turn the controller.



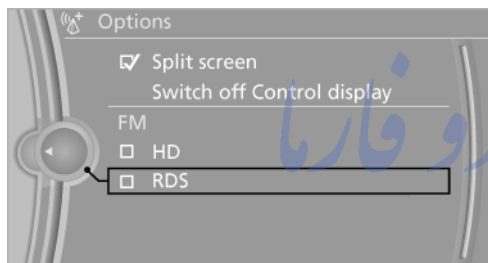
To store the station: press the controller for an extended period.

RDS*

RDS broadcasts additional information, such as the station name, in the FM wave band. When playing a station with multiple frequencies, the system automatically switches to the frequency with the best reception, if needed.

Switching the RDS on/off

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "RDS"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD Radio™ reception*

Many stations broadcast both analog and digital signals.

License conditions

HD Radio™ technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U. S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "HD Radio Reception"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD) This symbol is displayed in the status line when the audio signal is digital.

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode, the playback switches between analog and digital reception. Due to time delayed broadcasting, there may be repetitions or interruptions. In this case, switch off digital radio reception.

Displaying additional information

Some stations broadcast additional information on the current track, such as the name of the artist.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Station info"

Selecting a substation

□ This symbol indicates that a main station also broadcasts additional substations. The station name of the main station ends in HD1. Station names of the substations end in HD2, HD3, etc.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select the substation.








When reception is poor, the substation is muted for several seconds. If reception is interrupted for an extended period, it switches back to the main station.

Satellite radio*

General information

The channels are offered in predefined packages. The packages must be enabled by telephone.

Navigation bar overview

Symbol	Function
	Change the list view.
	Select the category.
	Direct channel entry
	Timeshift
	Open the My Favorites category/ open a favorite.
	Manage the favorites.
	Traffic Jump

The functions of the navigation bar symbols can also be stored on the [programmable memory buttons](#), refer to page 22.

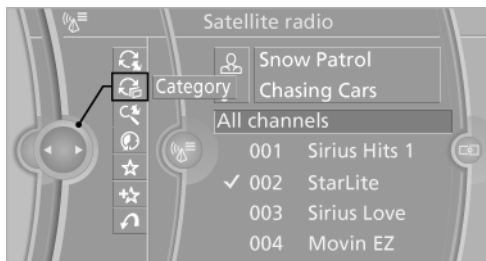
Managing a subscription

To be able to enable or unsubscribe from the channels, you must have reception. It is usually at its best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky. The channel name is displayed in the status line.

Enabling channels

The Unsubscribed Channels category contains all disabled channels.

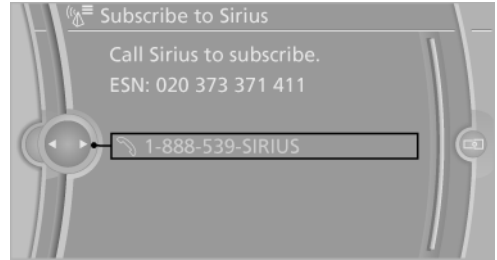
1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3.  "Category"



4. Select the Unsubscribed Channels category.
5. Select the desired channel.

The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

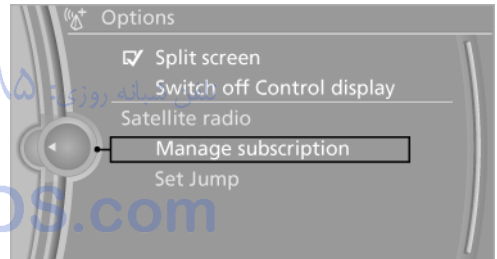
6. Select the phone number to have the channel enabled.



You can unsubscribe from the channels again via this phone number.

Unsubscribing from channels

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Manage subscription"



5. The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.
6. Call Sirius to unsubscribe from the channels.

Selecting channels

You can only listen to enabled channels.

The selected channel is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Via the iDrive

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"

3. Select "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.



Via the button on the radio



Press the button.

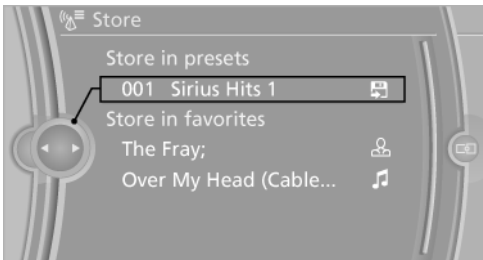
The next channel is selected.

Via direct channel entry

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Select channel"
4. Turn the controller until the desired channel is reached and press the controller.

Storing a channel

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. If necessary, open "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Press the controller again to confirm the highlighted channel.



7. Select the desired memory location.

The channels are stored for the remote control currently in use.

The channels can also be stored on the [programmable memory buttons](#), refer to [page 22](#).

Changing the list view

The list view changes every time the first symbol on the navigation bar is pressed.

Information on the channel is displayed.

Symbol	Meaning
	Channel name
	Artist
	Track

Selecting a category

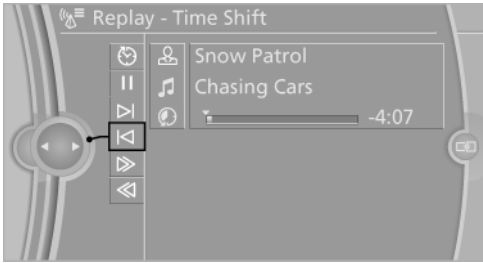
1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Category"
4. Select the desired category.

Timeshift

Approx. one hour of the program being broadcast on the channel currently being listened to is stored in a buffer. The signal must be available. The stored audio track can be played with a delay following the live broadcast. When the buffer is full, the older tracks are overwritten. The buffer is cleared when a new channel is selected.

Opening the timeshift function

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Replay - Time shift"



- ▶ The red arrow shows the current playback position.
- ▶ The time difference to the live broadcast is displayed next to the buffer bar.
- ▶ If playback is live, "live" is displayed next to the buffer bar.

Timeshift menu

Symbol	Function
	Go to the live broadcast
	Playback/pause
	Next track
	Previous track
	Fast forward
	Reverse
	Automatic timeshift deactivated/activated

Automatic timeshift

When the function is activated, audio playback is stopped automatically in the event of:

- ▶ Incoming and outgoing telephone calls.
- ▶ Activation of the voice activation system.
- ▶ Muting.

The audio playback then continues with a time delay.

To activate:

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Replay - Time shift"

4. "Automatic time shift"

To deactivate:

4. "Automatic time shift"

Storing favorites

Up to 30 favorites can be stored in the favorites list. Available favorites are artist, track, game, league, and team.

Storing the artist, track, or game

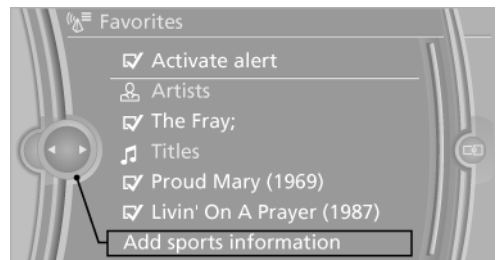
It is only possible to store favorites that are currently being broadcast. The channel information must be available.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. If necessary, open "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Select the artist, track, or game.

Storing the league or team

Leagues or teams can be added to the favorites from a selection list.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Manage favorites"
4. "Add sports information"



5. Select the league.
6. Select "Add all teams" or the desired team.

Opening the favorites

When an activated favorite is playing, the following message appears for approx. 20 seconds: "Favorite alert!".

☆☆ "Favorites"

Select the symbol while the message is shown.



The displayed favorite is played.

If there is no message, the system changes to the My Favorites category. All favorites currently being broadcast can be selected from a list.

Managing the favorites

Activating/deactivating the favorites

Favorites can be activated and deactivated globally and individually.

1. "Satellite radio"
2. ☆☆ "Manage favorites"
3. Select "Activate alert" or the desired favorite.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Deleting favorites

1. "Satellite radio"
2. ☆☆ "Manage favorites"
3. Highlight the desired favorite.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

Traffic Jump

Traffic and weather information for a selected region is broadcast every few minutes.

Selecting a region

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Set jump"
5. Select the desired region.

The region is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating/deactivating the jump

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. ↻ "Jump to:"

Information for the selected region is broadcast as soon as it is available.

A new panel opens.

Canceling the Traffic Jump: "Cancel".

Symbol	Meaning
↻	Information will be broadcast shortly.
↻	Information is currently being broadcast.

Select one of the symbols to deactivate Traffic Jump.

Automatic update

About twice a year, Sirius performs an update of the channel names and positions. The update takes place automatically and may take several minutes.

Notes

- Reception may not be available in some situations, such as under certain environmental or topographic conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
- The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages; next to tall buildings; or near trees, mountains or other powerful sources of radio interference.

Stored stations

General information

It is possible to store up to 40 stations.

Calling up a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.

Storing a station

The station currently selected is stored.

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. "Store station"



4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of stored stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

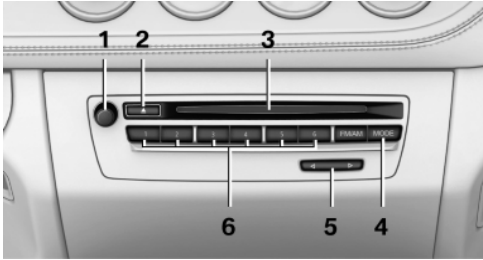
The stations can also be stored on the [programmable memory buttons](#), refer to [page 22](#).

Deleting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

CD/multimedia

Controls



- 1 Volume, on/off
- 2 Eject CD/DVD
- 3 CD/DVD drive
- 4 Change the entertainment source
- 5 Change station/track
- 6 Programmable memory buttons

CD/DVD

CD/DVD playback

Loading the CD/DVD player

Insert the CD/DVD with the printed side up. Playback begins automatically. Reading can take a few minutes with compressed audio files.

Starting playback

There is a CD/DVD in the CD/DVD player or changer.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"

3. Select the desired CD or DVD.



Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player
	CD/DVD changer*

Playable formats

- ▶ DVD: DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R DL, DVD+R DL, DVD audio (video part only), DVD video*.
- ▶ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA, VCD*, SVCD*. تلفن
- ▶ Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC.

Audio playback

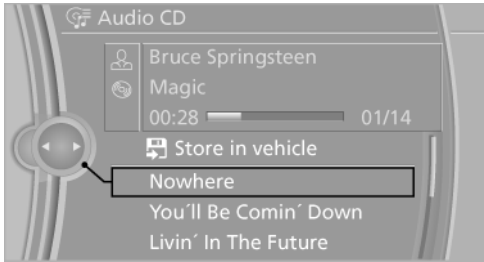
Selecting the track using the button



Press the button for the appropriate direction as often as necessary until the desired track is played back.

Selecting the track using the iDrive

Audio CDs

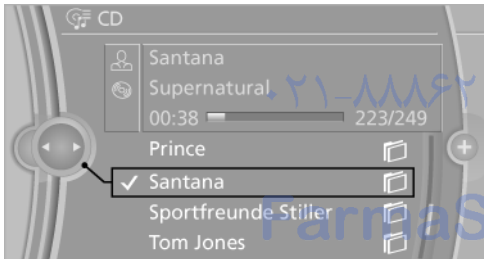


Select the desired track to begin playback.

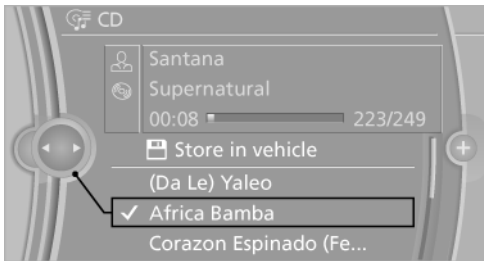
CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files

Depending on the data, some letters and numbers of the CD/DVD may not be displayed correctly.

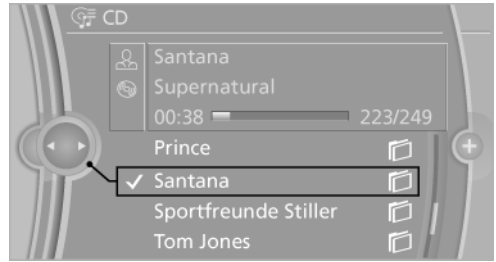
1. Select the directory if necessary.
To change to a higher level directory: move the controller to the left.



2. Select the desired track to begin playback.



Displaying* information on the track

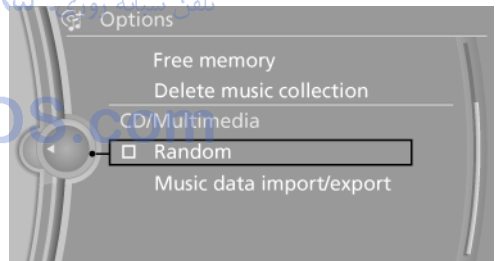


If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

- ▶ Interpret.
- ▶ Album track.
- ▶ Number of tracks on the CD/DVD.
- ▶ File name of track.

Random playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Random"



CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files: all tracks within the selected directory are played in random order.

Random mode is switched off when the audio source is changed and the ignition is switched off.

Fast forward/reverse



Press and hold the button.

Automatic repeat*

The selected track, directories, or CDs/DVDs are repeated automatically.

Video playback*

Country codes

Only DVDs with the code of the home region can be played back; also refer to the information on the DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	Southeast Asia
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand
5	Northwest Asia, North Africa
6	China
0	All regions

Playback

The video image is displayed on the Control Display up to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h; in some countries, it is only displayed if the parking brake is set or if the automatic transmission is in position P.

DVD video


1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a DVD with video content.

4. "DVD menu"



5. Start the DVD via the DVD menu.



VCD/SVCD

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a CD with video content.
4.  "Select track"
5. Select the desired track.

Video menu

To open the video menu: turn the controller during playback.

Press the controller when "Back" is displayed.

Symbol	Function
	Open DVD menu
	Starting playback
	Pause
	Stop
	Next chapter
	Previous chapter
	Fast forward
	Reverse

In fast forward/reverse: the speed increases every time the controller is pressed. To stop, start playback.

DVD menu

1. If necessary, turn the controller to open the video menu.

2. **DVD** "DVD menu"

The DVD menu is displayed. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.

3. To select menu items: move the controller and press it.

To change to the video menu: turn the controller and press it.

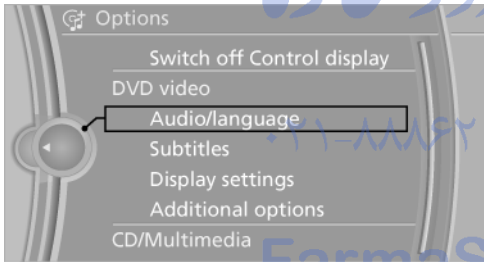
DVD/VCD settings

For some DVDs, settings can only be made via the DVD menu; refer also to the information on the DVD.

Selecting the language*

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Audio/language"



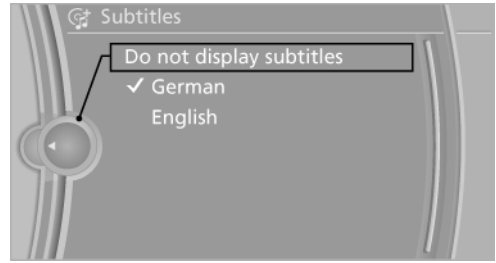
4. Select the desired language.

Selecting the subtitles*

The subtitles that are available depend on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Subtitles"

4. Select the desired language or "Do not display subtitles".



Setting the brightness, contrast and color

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display settings"
4. "Brightness", "Contrast" or "Color"

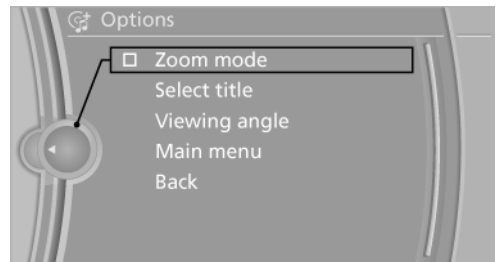


5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Selecting the zoom

Display the video image on the entire screen.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Zoom mode"




Selecting a track

DVD video:

1. Turn the controller when the DVD menu is displayed.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Select title"
5. Select the desired track.

VCD/SVCD:

1.  "Select track"
2. Select the desired track.

Selecting the camera angle*

The availability of a different camera angle depends on the DVD and the current DVD track.

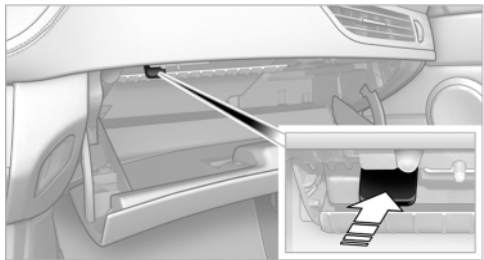
1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Viewing angle"
5. Select the desired camera angle.

Opening the main menu, back

These functions are not contained on every DVD. Therefore, they may not be available for use.

CD/DVD changer*

In the glove compartment



The BMW CD/DVD changer for six CDs/DVDs is located in the glove compartment.

Press the lever.

The CD/DVD changer is tilted down.

To close: fold the CD/DVD changer up until it engages.




Fold the CD/DVD changer up
Always fold the CD/DVD changer back up after filling and emptying it; otherwise, the DVD changer could be damaged.◀

Controls and displays



- 1 Empty CD/DVD compartments
- 2 LEDs on the CD/DVD slot
- 3 Buttons for CD/DVD compartments
- 4 CD/DVD slot
- 5 Load CD/DVD compartments

Loading the CD/DVD compartments individually


1.  Press the button.
The LED on the first empty compartment flashes.
2. Select another compartment if necessary.
3. Wait for the LEDs on the DVD slot to flash.
4. Insert a single CD or DVD in the middle.

The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically and placed into the selected compartment.



Sliding in CDs/DVDs
Do not insert the CD/DVD until the LEDs on the DVD slot are flashing; otherwise, the CD/DVD or the CD/DVD changer could be damaged.
Do not continue to push on the CD/DVD; this may cause it to jam and prevent it from being able to eject again.◀

Filling all vacant CD/DVD compartments

1.  Press the button for a longer period.
The LEDs on the empty CD compartments flash.
2. Wait for the LEDs on the DVD slot to begin flashing and then insert each CD or DVD into the center of the slot.
The CDs/DVDs are drawn in automatically and placed into the vacant compartments.




Sliding in CDs/DVDs

Do not insert the CD/DVD until the LEDs on the DVD slot are flashing; otherwise, the CD/DVD or the CD/DVD changer could be damaged.


Do not continue to push on the CD/DVD; this may cause it to jam and prevent it from being able to eject again. ◀

After they are inserted, it may take several minutes for the CDs/DVDs to be read in.

Removing a single CD/DVD

1.  Press the button.
2. Select the CD/DVD compartment.
The CD/DVD is partially ejected.
3. Remove the CD/DVD.

Removing all CDs/DVDs

1.  Press the button for a longer period.
2. Remove the CDs/DVDs.

Malfunctions

If all LEDs on the CD/DVD changer flash rapidly, the system is malfunctioning.

To eliminate the malfunction:

1. Press one of the buttons:



The CD/DVD last inserted is ejected.

2. Remove the CD/DVD.

If the LEDs stop flashing rapidly, the CD/DVD changer is functional again.

Audio playback*

The audio track of a DVD can be played back even if video playback is not possible in the vehicle.

Only the main film without the previews or extras can be played back.

Starting playback

A DVD is located in the DVD changer.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.

Selecting a chapter using the button



Press the button repeatedly until the desired chapter is played.

Selecting a chapter using iDrive

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.
4. Select the desired chapter.

Fast forward/reverse



Press and hold the button.

Selecting the language*

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Audio/language"
6. Select the desired language.

Notes

CD/DVD player and changer



Do not remove the cover

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged; otherwise, severe eye damage can result. ◀

CDs and DVDs



Use of CDs/DVDs

- ▶ Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied, as these can become detached during playback due to heat buildup and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
- ▶ Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g., single CDs; otherwise, the CDs or the adapter may jam and no longer eject.
- ▶ Do not use combined CDs/DVDs, e.g., DVD Plus, as the CDs/DVDs can jam and will no longer eject. ◀

General malfunctions

- ▶ CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.
- ▶ If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens, and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions involving individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this can be due to one of the following causes:

Home-recorded CDs/DVDs

- ▶ Possible reasons for malfunctions with home-recorded CDs/DVDs are inconsistent data creation or recording processes, or poor quality or old age of the blank CD/DVD.
- ▶ Only label CDs/DVDs on the upper side with a pen intended for this purpose.

Damage

- ▶ Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.
- ▶ Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.
- ▶ Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F/50 °C, high humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology that is based on multiple registered US patents and the intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Media protected by this product - unless otherwise agreed with Macrovision - may only be used for private purposes. Copying of this technology is prohibited.

DTS Digital Surround™

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent Numbers: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & and other patents granted and registered in the USA and worldwide. DTS and the logo are registered trademarks & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS Inc. © DTS, Inc. All rights reserved.

Music collection*

Storing music

General information

Music tracks from CDs/DVDs and USB devices can be stored in the music collection on a hard disc in the vehicle and played from there.

- ▷ Audio CD: tracks are converted into a compressed audio format. If available, information on the album, such as the artist, is stored as well.
- ▷ CD/DVD or USB device with compressed audio files: the entire content of the CD/DVD or the USB device is stored in the vehicle as an album. The WMA, MP3, and AAC formats are stored. Individual tracks and directories can be deleted later, [Deleting a track and directory, refer to page 159](#).

Tracks with DRM copy protection can be stored but cannot be played back.



Backing up music data

Regularly back up the music data; otherwise, it could be lost if there is a fault on the hard disc. ◀



Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®.

Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2010 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2010 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773; #6,161,132; #6,230,192; #6,230,207; #6,240,459; #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Storing from a CD/DVD

1. Insert a CD or DVD into the CD/DVD player.
2. "CD/Multimedia"

3. "CD/DVD"
4. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
5. "Store in vehicle"



The music collection is displayed and the first track of the CD/DVD is played back. During the storage process, the tracks are played in sequence.

Observe the following during the storage process:

Do not switch to the CD/DVD player and do not remove the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD player as this will interrupt the storage process. You can switch to the other audio sources without interrupting the storage process. Tracks from the current CD/DVD that have already been stored can be called up.

Interrupting storage


1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. "Storing..."



4. "Cancel storing"

The storage process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Continuing the storage process

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3.  Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
4. "Continue storing"

Storage of the CD/DVD continues at the beginning of the track at which storage was interrupted.

Album information

During storage, information such as the name of the artist is stored with the track, if this information is available in the vehicle database or on the CD.

To update the database, contact your service center.

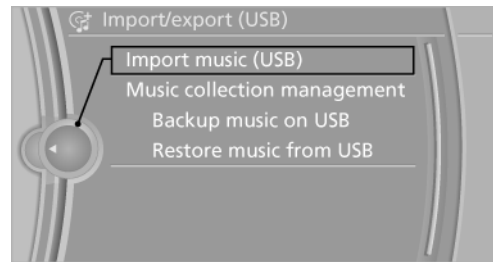
Storing from a USB device

To store music, a suitable device must be connected to the USB interface in the glove compartment.

- ▶ Suitable devices: USB mass storage devices, such as USB flash drives or MP3 players with a USB interface.
- ▶ Unsuitable devices: USB hard drives, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with multiple inserts, Apple iPod/iPhone. Music from the Apple iPod/iPhone can be played via the USB audio interface* in the center armrest.

1. Connect the USB device to the [USB interface in the glove compartment](#), refer to [page 107](#).
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "Music collection"
4. Open "Options".
5. "Music data import/export"

6. "Import music (USB)"

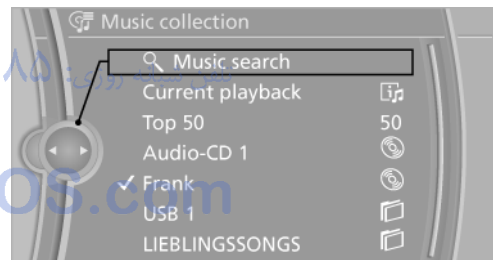


Playing music

Music search

All tracks for which additional information has been stored can be accessed by the music search. Tracks without additional information can be called up via the corresponding [album](#), refer to [page 158](#).

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Music search"



4. Select the desired category.



5. Select the desired entry.
 - ▶ Select "A-Z search" and [enter](#), refer to [page 23](#), the desired entry.


- ▶ Select the desired entry from the list.
- 6. Select other categories if you wish.
The tracks found are listed in alphabetical order.
Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
- 7. "Start play"
The list of tracks is repeated automatically.

Restarting the music search

"New search"

Music search by voice*

Instructions for [voice activation system](#), refer to [page 22](#).

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Music search‹
3. Open the desired category, e.g., ›Select artist‹.
4. Say the desired entry in the list.
5. Select other categories if you wish.

To select a track directly: ›Title ... ‹

Say the spoken instruction and the name of the desired track in a single sentence.

Current playback

The list of tracks that was generated last by the music search, or the album that was selected last.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"

3. "Current playback"



4. Select the desired track, if necessary.



Top 50

The 50 most frequently played tracks.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Top 50"
4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

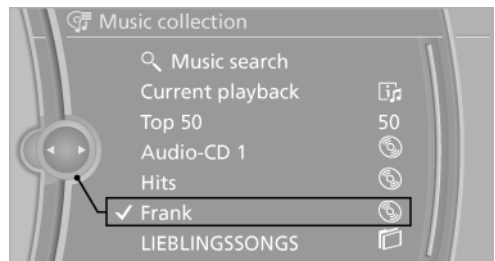
Albums

All stored albums, listed in order of their storage dates.

Symbol	Format
	Audio CD
	Compressed audio files

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Select the desired album.

Depending on the album, the tracks or the subdirectories of the album are displayed. The first track is played automatically, if possible.



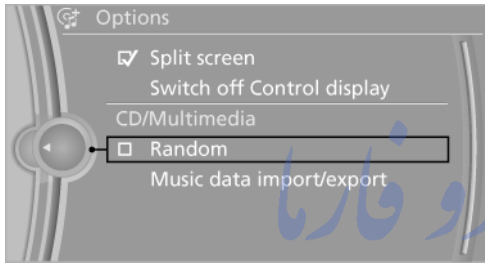
4. Change directories if needed to select tracks.

To go up a level in the directory: move the controller to the left.

Random playback

All tracks of the selection are played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"



Managing music

Albums

Renaming an album*

The name of the album, if available, is automatically entered when the album is stored. If the name is not available, it can be changed later if desired.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the desired album.
4. Open "Options".

5. "Rename album"



6. Select the letters individually.

Deleting an album

An album cannot be deleted while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the desired album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete album"

Deleting a track and directory

A track cannot be deleted while it is being played.

A directory cannot be deleted while a track from that directory is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the directory or track.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete folder" or "Delete track"

Free memory capacity

Display the free memory capacity in the music collection.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Free memory"

Music collection

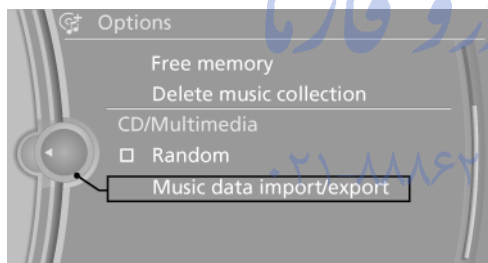
Backing up the music collection

The entire music collection can be stored on a USB device. Make sure there is enough free memory capacity on the USB device.

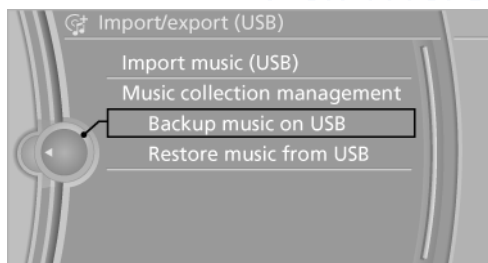
Depending on the number of tracks, backing up the music collection may take several hours.

Therefore, it is best to perform the backup during a long trip.

1. Starting the engine.
2. Connect the USB device to the **USB interface in the glove compartment**, refer to page 107.
3. "CD/Multimedia"
4. "Music collection"
5. Open "Options".
6. "Music data import/export"



7. "Backup music on USB"



Storing the music collection in the vehicle

When storing from the USB device, the existing music collection in the vehicle is replaced.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"

3. Open "Options".
4. "Music data import/export"
5. "Restore music from USB"

Deleting the music collection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete music collection"

External devices

At a glance

Symbol	Meaning
	AUX-IN port
	USB audio interface*/mobile phone audio interface*

AUX-IN port

At a glance

- ▶ For connecting audio devices, e.g., MP3 player. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.
- ▶ Recommendation: use medium tone and volume settings on the audio device. The tone depends on the quality of the audio files.


Connecting



The AUX-IN port is in the center armrest.

Connect the headphone connector or line-out connector of the device to the AUX-IN port.


Playback

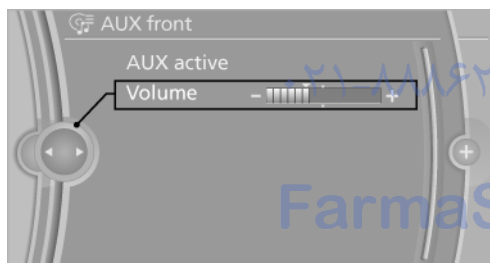
1. Connect the audio device, switch it on and select a track on the audio device.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. If necessary, "External devices".
4.  "AUX front"

Volume

The volume of the sound output is dependent on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

Adjusting the volume

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If necessary, "External devices".
3.  "AUX front"
4. "Volume"



5. Turn the controller until the desired volume is set and press the controller.

USB audio interface*/mobile phone audio interface*

At a glance

It is possible to connect external audio devices. They can be operated via iDrive. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Connectors for external devices

- ▶ Connection via USB audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g., MP3 play-

ers, USB flash drives, or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.

- ▶ Connection via [snap-in adapter](#), refer to [page 174](#), when equipped with extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone: Apple iPhone or mobile phones. Playback is only possible if no connector is plugged into the USB audio interface.

Due to the large number of different audio devices available on the market, it cannot be ensured that every audio device/mobile phone is operable on the vehicle.

Ask your service center about suitable audio devices/mobile phones.

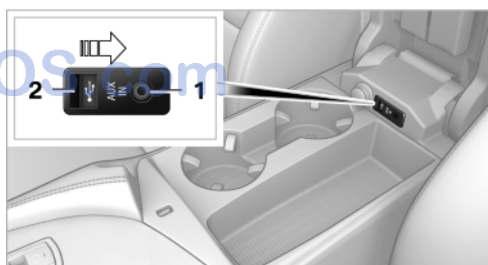
Audio files

Standard audio files can be played back:

- ▶ MP3.
- ▶ WMA.
- ▶ WAV (PCM).
- ▶ AAC.
- ▶ Playback lists: M3U.

Connecting

The USB audio interface is in the center armrest.



- 1 AUX-IN port
- 2 USB interface

Connection of Apple iPod/iPhone via USB audio interface

To connect the device, use the special cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone, available from your service center. The cable adapter is required for a good connection.

Connect the Apple iPod/iPhone to the AUX-IN port 1 and USB interface 2 using the cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone.

The Apple iPod/iPhone menu structure is supported by the USB audio interface.

Connection of a USB device via the USB audio interface

Connect using a flexible adapter cable to protect the USB audio interface and the USB device against physical damage.

Connect the USB device to the USB interface 2.

After connecting for the first time

Information on all tracks (e.g., artist, genre) and the playback lists are transferred to the vehicle. This may take some time, depending on the USB device and the number of tracks.

During transmission, the tracks can be called up via the file directory.


Number of tracks

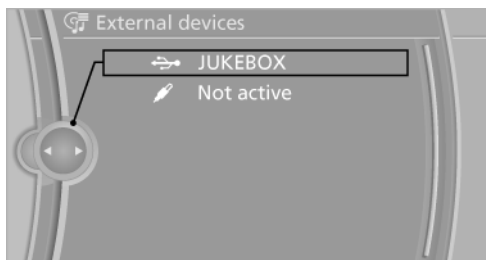
Information from up to four USB devices or for approx. 16,000 tracks can be stored in the vehicle. If a fifth device is connected or if more than 16,000 tracks are stored, information on existing tracks may be deleted.

Copy protection

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.

Playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3.  Select the symbol.



The playback starts with the first track.

When an Apple iPhone is connected via the snap-in adapter and an audio device is connected to the AUX-IN port at the same time, the audio signal of the AUX-IN port is played.

On the Splitscreen, the CD cover for the music track might be displayed after a few seconds.


Track search

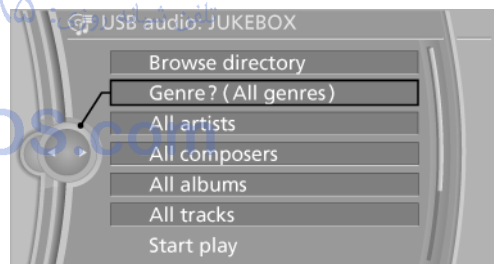
Selection is possible via:

- ▷ Playback lists.
- ▷ Information: type of music, artist, album, track.
- ▷ Additionally for USB devices: file directory, composer.

Tracks are displayed if they have been saved in the Latin alphabet.

Starting the track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired entry from the list.



5. Select other categories if you wish.

Not all categories need to be selected. For example, if all of the tracks by a certain artist are to be displayed, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.


6. "Start play"

Restarting a track search

"New search"


Playback lists

Calling up playback lists.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. "Playlists"

Current playback

List of tracks currently being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. "Current playback"

Random playback

The current list of tracks is played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse



Press and hold the button.

Notes

Do not expose the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the audio device operating instructions.

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g., bit rates greater than 256 kbit/s, the files may not play back correctly in each case.

Information on connection

- ▷ The connected audio device is supplied with max. 500 mA current if this is supported by the device. Therefore, do not connect the device to the power socket in the vehicle.
- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.

- ▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard drives.
- ▷ Do not use the USB audio interface to recharge external devices.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Communication

All of the options available to you for mobile communication with family, friends, business partners, and service providers are described in this chapter.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Telephone*

At a glance

The concept

After the mobile phone is paired once with the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using the iDrive, the steering wheel buttons and voice activation*.

A paired mobile phone is automatically detected as soon as it is located inside the vehicle, when the ignition is switched on.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired.



Using the mobile phone while driving

Make entries only when traffic and road conditions allow. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users. ◀

Snap-in adapter*

The snap-in adapter is used to:

- ▷ Hold the mobile phone.
- ▷ Recharge the battery.
- ▷ Connect the mobile phone to an outside antenna of the vehicle.

This provides for better network reception and consistent sound quality.

Approved mobile phones

Details on which mobile phones with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package can be obtained at www.bmw.com/bluetooth.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

The vehicle identification number and software part number are needed to determine which mobile phones are supported by the mobile phone preparation package. The software version of the mobile phone may also be required.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Options"
3. "Bluetooth info"
4. "Display system information"

These approved mobile phones with a certain software version, support the vehicle functions described below.

Malfunctions may occur with other mobile phones or software versions.

Do not operate a mobile phone that is connected to the vehicle on the mobile phone keypad, as this may lead to a malfunction.

Pairing/unpairing the mobile phone

Requirements

- ▷ The mobile phone is suitable.
- ▷ The mobile phone is ready for operation.
- ▷ **Bluetooth is activated on the vehicle, refer to page 167, and on the mobile phone.**
- ▷ Bluetooth presettings may need to be made on the mobile phone, e.g., for a connection without confirmation or visibility, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.
- ▷ A number with at least four and a maximum of 16 digits is defined as the Bluetooth passkey. It is only required once for pairing.
- ▷ The ignition is switched on.

Pairing and connecting



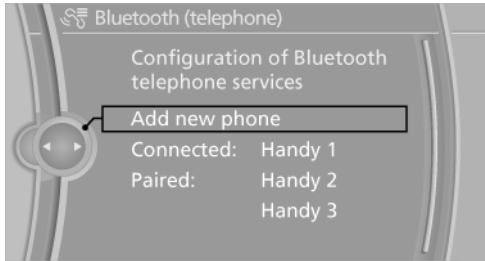
Pairing the mobile phone

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users, only pair the mobile phone while the vehicle is stationary. ◀

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"

3. "Add new phone"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.



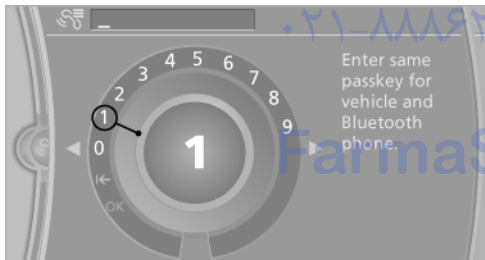
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions: for instance, search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.

5. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

You are prompted by the iDrive or mobile phone to enter the same Bluetooth passkey.

6. Enter the passkey and confirm.



If the pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

Four mobile phones can be paired with the vehicle at once.

If pairing was unsuccessful: [what to do if](#), refer to page 168.

Following the initial pairing

▷ The mobile phone is detected/connected in the vehicle within a short period of time when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

▷ After they have been identified, phone book entries are transferred from the SIM card and/or mobile phone to the vehicle; this depends on the mobile phone.

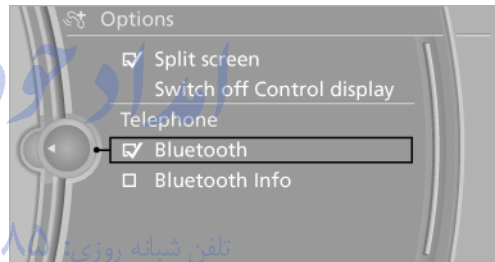
▷ Four mobile phones can be paired.

▷ Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g., authorization or a secure connection; refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth

Bluetooth is not permitted everywhere. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth"



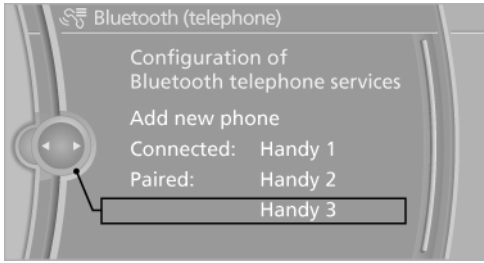
Connecting a particular mobile phone

If more than one mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the mobile phone at the top of the list is connected. A different mobile phone can be connected by selecting it.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"

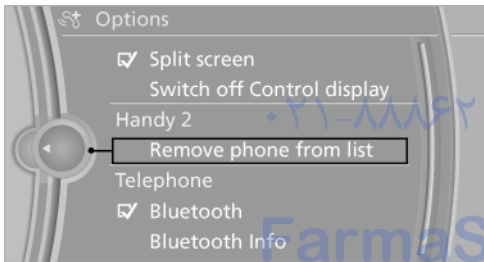
All paired mobile phones are listed.

3. Select the mobile phone that is to be connected.



Unpairing the mobile phone

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"
All paired mobile phones are listed.
3. Highlight the mobile phone that is to be unpaired.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Remove phone from list"



What to do if...

Information on [suitable mobile phones](#), refer to [page 166](#).

The mobile phone could not be paired or connected.

- ▷ Is Bluetooth activated in the vehicle and on the mobile phone? Activate Bluetooth on the vehicle and on the mobile phone.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and via iDrive.
- ▷ Did it take longer than 30 seconds to enter the passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.

- ▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle? Delete connections with other devices if necessary.
- ▷ The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life. Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter* or via the charging cable.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it is possible that only one device can be connected to the vehicle. Unpair the connected device from the vehicle and pair and connect only one device.
- ▷ The mobile phone no longer reacts? Switch the mobile phone off and on again. Repeat the pairing procedure.

Not all phone book entries are displayed.

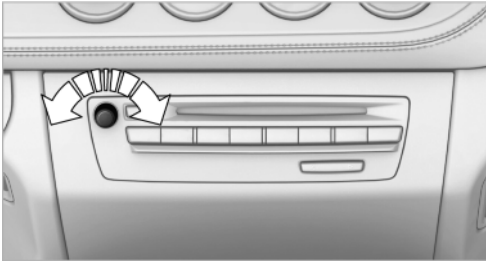
- ▷ Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- ▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card* are transmitted.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries to be stored is too high.
- ▷ The phone connection quality is poor.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it may be possible to adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal.

- ▷ Insert the mobile phone into the snap-in adapter* or place it in the area of the center console.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, please contact the hotline or service center.

Controls

Adjusting the volume



Turn the knob until the desired volume is selected.

The ringer volume of incoming calls and the call volume can be adjusted independently.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Incoming call

Receiving calls

If the number of the caller is stored in the phone book and is transmitted by the network, the name of the contact is displayed.

Accepting a call

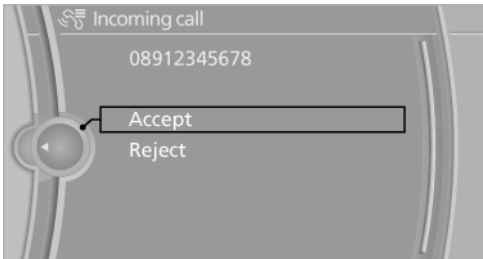
Via the button on the steering wheel



Press the button.

Via the iDrive

"Accept"



Rejecting a call

Via the iDrive

"Reject"

Ending a call

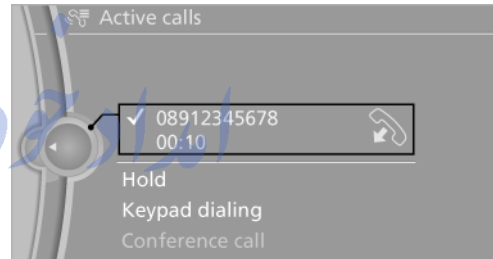
Via the button on the steering wheel



Press the button.

Via the iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. Select an active call.



Entering a phone number

Dialing a number

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Select the symbol.



or



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The phone number can also be entered by voice*.

Calls with multiple parties

General information

You can switch between calls and connect two calls to a single conference call. These functions must be supported by the mobile phone and service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function might have to be activated by the service provider and the mobile phone must be adjusted accordingly.

If a second call comes in during an ongoing call, you may hear a call waiting signal.

"Accept"

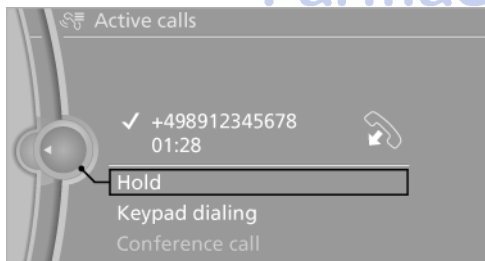
The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a second call

Establish an additional call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Hold"

The existing call is put on hold.



4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

Switching between two calls, hold call

Active call: indicated by a red handset.

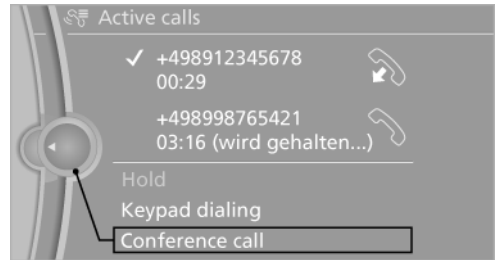
Call on hold: indicated by a green handset.

To switch to the call on hold, select this handset.

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"



When terminating a conference call, both calls are ended. If one call is terminated by another party, the other call can be continued.

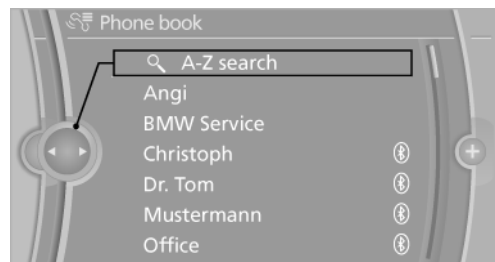
Phone book

Displays

The phone book accesses the contacts* and shows all contacts for which a phone number has been stored. The entries can be selected to make a call. *تلفن شیبانه ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۸*

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

All contacts with a phone number are displayed. A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts, refer to page 176.



Calling a contact

1. Select the desired contact.

Select the symbol. Contact with one phone number. The connection is being established.

- Select the symbol. Contact with more than one phone number. Select the phone number, the connection is being established.

A telephone call is not possible, the mobile phone has no coverage or no network or a Service Request* is active.

Editing a contact

Changing the entries in "Contacts", refer to page 177. When a contact is changed, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

- Highlight the contact.
- Open "Options".
- "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

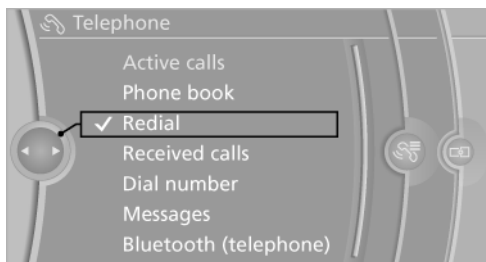
Redialing

General information

The eight phone numbers dialed last are displayed.

Dialing the number via the iDrive

- "Telephone"
- "Redial"



- Select the desired entry.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries

- Highlight the entry.

- Open "Options".
- "Delete entry" or "Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

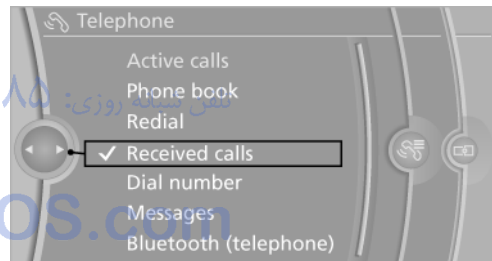
- Highlight the entry.
- Open "Options".
- "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"
- Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other"
- Complete the entries if necessary.
- "Store contact"

Received calls

Displaying calls

The 20 calls that were last received are displayed.

- "Telephone"
- "Received calls"



Calling a number from the list

Selecting an entry.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries

- Highlight the entry.
- Open "Options".
- "Delete entry" or "Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

- Highlight the entry.
- Open "Options".

3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other"
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store contact"

Messages

Display of different messages:

- ▷ Messages from My Info
- ▷ Message from the [Concierge service](#), refer to page 172.

Displaying messages

1. "Telephone"
2. "Messages"
3. Select the desired message.

My Info

Starting destination guidance


1. Select the message.
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."

Dialing the number in the message

1. Select the message.
2. "Call"

Message from the Concierge service


Using an address in destination guidance

1. Select the message.
2.  "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."



3. Start destination guidance, if necessary.

Dialing the number in the message

1. Select the message.
2.  "Call"

Storing an address

1. Select the message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Deleting messages

1. Highlight the message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete message" or "Delete all messages"

Hands-free system

General information

Calls that are being made on the hands-free system can be continued on the mobile phone and vice versa.

From the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Calls that were begun outside of the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be continued on the hands-free system with the ignition switched on.

Depending on the mobile phone, the system automatically switches to the hands-free system.

If the system does not switch over automatically, follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

From the hands-free system to the mobile phone

Calls that are made on the hands-free system can in some cases be continued on the mobile phone; this depends on the mobile phone.

Follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Voice operation*

The concept

- ▷ The mobile phone can be operated without taking your hands from the steering wheel.
- ▷ In many cases, the entries are accompanied by announcements or questions.
- ▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.


Requirements

Use the Control Display to set the language to be applied to the voice activation system. The spoken instructions are displayed.


Set the language, refer to page 68.

Using voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1.  Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
An acoustic signal indicates that the command can now be voiced.
2. Say the command.
The command appears on the Control Display.

Terminating the voice activation system

 Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Having possible commands read aloud

›Help‹

Possible commands are announced.


The digits from zero to nine are recognized. The digits can be spoken separately or combined in a sequence to accelerate the entry.

Using alternative commands

The system often recognizes a number of different commands to run a function; for instance:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹

Example: dialing a phone number

1.  Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Dial number‹
The system says: ›Please say the number‹.
3. For instance, ›123 456 790‹
The system says: ›123 456 790. Continue?‹.
4. ›Dial number‹
The system says: ›Dialing number‹.

Calling

Dialing a phone number

1. ›Dial number‹
2. Say the phone number.
For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dial‹

Correcting the phone number

The sequence of digits can be deleted after the system has repeated the digits.

›Correct number‹

The command can be repeated as often as necessary.

Deleting a phone number

›Delete‹

All digits entered up to that point are deleted.

Redialing

›Redial‹

Voice phone book*

A separate phone book is needed for voice activation.

The entries must be entered using voice activation and are separate from the memory in the mobile phone. Up to 50 entries can be set up.

Saving an entry

1. ›Save name‹
2. Say the name. Do not exceed the speaking duration of approx. 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number after being prompted to do so by the system.
4. ›Save‹

Deleting an entry

1. ›Delete name‹
2. Say the name after being prompted to do so.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Deleting all entries

1. ›Delete phone book‹
The dialog for deleting the phone book is opened.
2. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the query again with ›Yes‹.

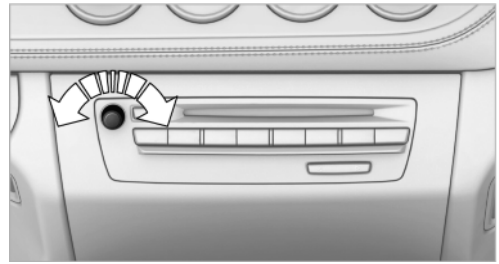
Reading and selecting entries

1. ›Read phone book‹
The dialog for reading the phone book is opened.
2. Say ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read.

Selecting an entry

1. ›Dial name‹
2. Say the name after being prompted to do so.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Adjusting the volume



Turn the knob during an announcement.

- ▶ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▶ The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the **SOS button**, refer to [page 209](#), in the vicinity of the interior rearview mirror.

Environmental conditions

- ▶ Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▶ Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- ▶ Keep the doors, windows, and retractable hardtop closed to prevent noise interference.
- ▶ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

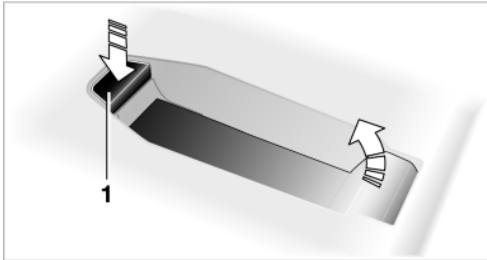
Snap-in adapter*

Installation position

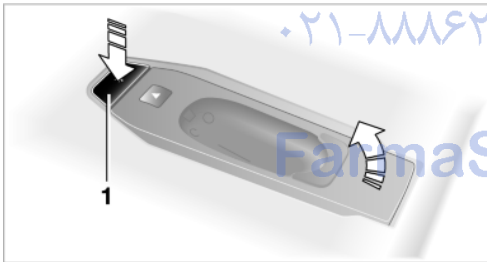
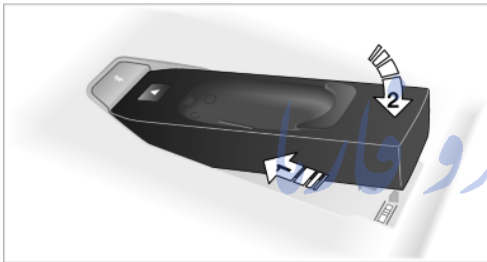
In the center armrest.

Inserting/removing the snap-in adapter

1. Press button 1 and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front, arrow 1, and press down, arrow 2, until it engages.

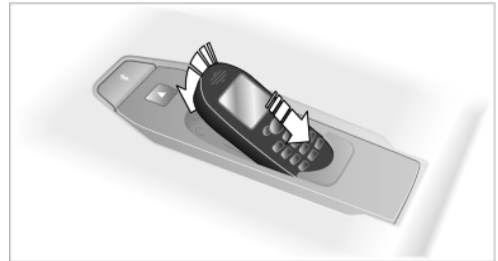


To remove the snap-in adapter: press button 1.

Inserting the mobile phone

1. Depending on the mobile phone, remove the protective cap from the antenna connector of the mobile phone.

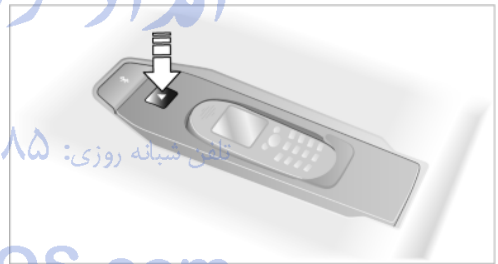
2. With the buttons facing up, slide the mobile phone up toward the electrical contacts and press it down until it engages.



The mobile phone's battery is charged as soon as the vehicle is in the radio ready state or the steering is unlocked.

To conserve vehicle battery power, you should avoid using the mobile phone when the ignition is switched off.

Removing the mobile phone



Press the button and remove the mobile phone.

Contacts*

General information

Contacts can be created and edited. The contacts from the mobile phone* are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. The addresses can be adopted as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed directly.

New contact

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"



3. The entry fields are still filled with the previous entries: "Delete input fields"
4. Fill in the entry fields: select the symbol next to the entry field.



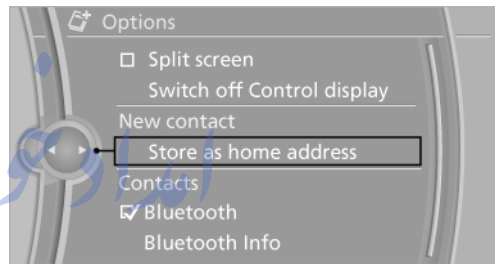
5. Enter, refer to page 23, the text.
When equipped with a navigation system:
Only addresses contained in the navigation data in the vehicle can be entered. This ensures that destination guidance is possible for all addresses.

6. If necessary, "Store".
7. "Store contact in vehicle"

Specifying a contact as the home address

A contact can be stored as a home address. It is placed at the top of "My contacts".

1. Create a new contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as home address"



My contacts

General information

A list of all contacts in the vehicle and mobile phone*.

Displaying contacts

1. "Contacts"
2. "My contacts"



All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an **A-Z search is offered, refer to page 23.**

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
📍	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
📱	Mobile phone*

Detailed view*

Select the desired contact.

All fields that have been filled in for that contact are displayed.

Selecting the sorting order of the names

Names can be displayed in a different order.

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display: last, first name" or "Display: first, last name"

Depending on how the contacts were stored on your mobile phone, the names may be displayed differently than the display selected.

Selecting the contact as a navigation destination*

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. Select the desired address.

When contacts from the mobile phone* are used, the address may need to be matched to the navigation data contained in the vehicle. In this case:

Correct the address.

Checking the address as a destination*

An address that is to be used for destination guidance must match the navigation data contained in the vehicle. The address can be checked for this purpose.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address if necessary.

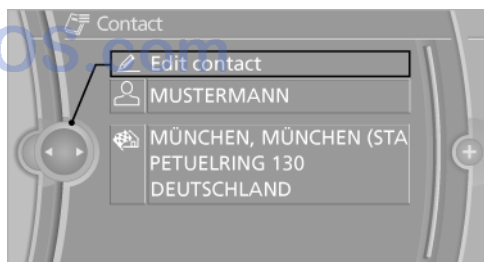
If the address is corrected and stored, a copy of it is stored in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone.

Dialing phone numbers*

1. "My contacts"
 2. Select the desired contact.
 3. Select the phone number.
- The connection is established.

Editing a contact

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. "Edit contact"



4. Change the entries.
5. Move the controller to the left.
6. "Yes"

If a contact from the mobile phone is edited, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone*. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle, and only this copy is displayed. Under certain circumstances, a contact entry with the same name is created.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone cannot be deleted.

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts"

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲-۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

BMW Assist

General information

BMW Assist provides you with various services, e.g., transmission of the position data of your vehicle to the BMW Assist Response Center if an Emergency Request* has been initiated.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed upon contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without your having to visit a service center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist services will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a service center after you sign a new contract.

Requirements

- ▷ The installed BMW Assist system is logged in to a wireless communications network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- ▷ To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- ▷ To activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.
- ▷ The BMW Assist service contract was signed with your service center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. Enabling must have been completed.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated.

Services offered

- ▷ Emergency Request: when you press the SOS button, a connection to the BMW Assist Response Center is established. The BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Automatic Collision Notification: under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center after a

serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.

- ▷ Enhanced Roadside Assistance: BMW Roadside Assistance* can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle and position data are transmitted in the process.
 - ▷ Customer Relations: connection with Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.
 - ▷ TeleService: data on your vehicle's service status or required inspections are transmitted to your service center, either automatically before a service due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
 - ▷ Remote Door Unlock: the BMW Assist Response Center provides assistance if, for example, the remote control is not available and the vehicle needs to be opened.
 - ▷ Stolen Vehicle Recovery: after you report that your vehicle was stolen to the police, the BMW Assist Response Center can determine its position.
 - ▷ In addition to these services, the optional Convenience Plan offers Concierge service and information for route planning, traffic, and weather. A limited number of calls can be made via the BMW Assist Response Center with Critical Calling if, for example, the mobile phone is not available or discharged.
- Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center.

TeleService*

General information

TeleService supports communication with your service center.

- ▷ Data on the vehicle's service requirements can be sent directly to the service center. In this way, the service center can plan its work in advance. This shortens the duration of the service appointment.
- ▷ In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition can be sent directly to Roadside Assistance.
- ▷ The service varies by country.
- ▷ Connection costs may ensue.
- ▷ Services may be restricted abroad.

Requirements

- ▷ BMW Assist is activated.
- ▷ Wireless reception is available.
- ▷ The engine is running.

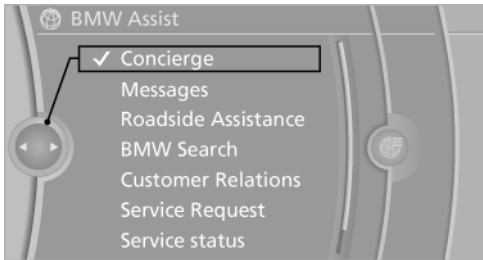
Concierge service*

General information

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Assist Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional Convenience Plan.

Starting the Concierge service

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Concierge"



3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established with the BMW Assist Concierge service. Phone numbers and addresses can be transmitted to the vehicle.

Open the message via the [message list](#), refer to [page 172](#).

Roadside Assistance

At a glance

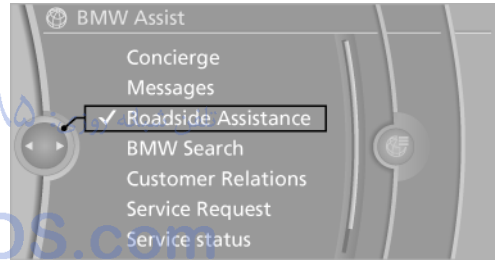
BMW Roadside Assistance* can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

Starting Roadside Assistance

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

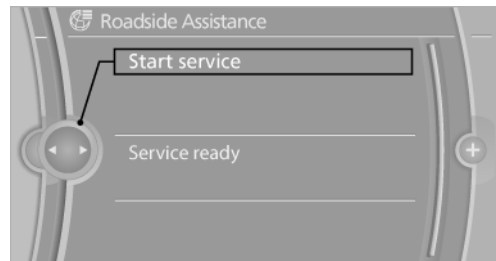
1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"

The Roadside Assistance number is displayed. If the mobile phone* is paired, a connection is established to Roadside Assistance.



Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"
3. "Start service"



TeleService Diagnosis*

TeleService Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that are important for vehicle diagnosis. These data are transmitted automatically.

After the data are transmitted, the voice connection to Roadside Assistance is re-established.

TeleService Help*

TeleService Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

TeleService Help can be started after a prompt by Roadside Assistance and the termination of the voice connection.

Starting TeleService Help

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. The engine is running.
4. "TeleService Help"

After completion of TeleService Help, a voice connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

Activating BMW Assist*

General information

If the services included in a Assist subscription are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

Activating

1. Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. "Activate BMW Assist"

Activation may take several minutes. If another menu is opened, activation continues running in the background.

BMW Search*

At a glance

A business search can be opened via BMW Search.

License conditions

This product contains NetFront Browser software of ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD., in Japan and other countries.

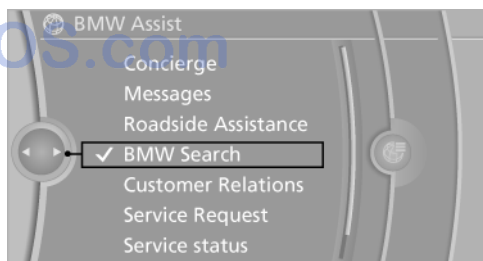
This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Requirements

- ▶ Subscription to the optional Convenience Plan.
- ▶ The **date setting**, refer to page 67, on the Control Display is current.
- ▶ The vehicle is located within wireless network coverage.

Starting BMW Search

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "BMW Search"



3. If necessary, "OK".

The BMW Search home page is displayed.

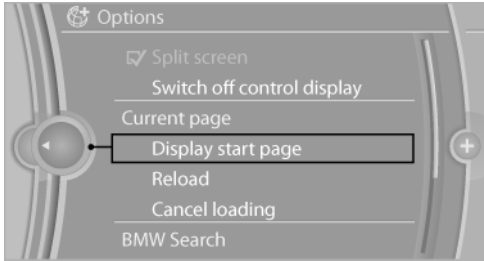
Using BMW Search

To start a search:

- ▶ Turn the controller to highlight an element.
- ▶ Press the controller to display an element.

Opening the start page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Display start page"



Loading a new page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Reload"

Cancel

1. Open "Options".
2. "Cancel loading"

Customer Relations

At a glance

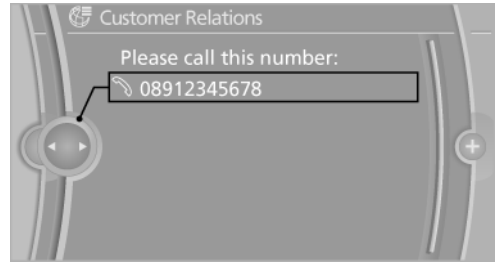
Contact Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

Calling Customer Relations

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"

The Customer Relations phone number is displayed. If the mobile phone* is paired, a connection is established to Customer Relations.



Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"
3. "Start service"

Service Request*

At a glance

Sends information to your service partner to request the arrangement of a service appointment. The TeleService data is transmitted during a Service Request. If possible, your service partner will establish contact with you.

Starting a Service Request

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Service Request"
3. "Start service"



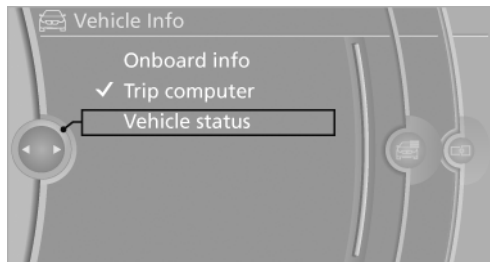
Automatic Service Request*

The TeleService data necessary for servicing the vehicle are automatically sent to your service partner prior to the service deadline. If possible,

the service partner will contact you and a service appointment can be arranged.

To check when your service partner was notified:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

Data transfer*

امداد خودرو فارما

The status of the data transfer is displayed.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Data transfer"

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Services status* FarmaSOS.com

Displaying available services

Display of all services available in the vehicle.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. Open any menu.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Service status"
5. "Available services"

Activating BMW Assist

If the services included in a Assist subscription are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

"Activate BMW Assist"



امداد خود رو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Mobility

In order to always ensure your mobility, you will find important information on operating fluids, wheels and tires, maintenance and Roadside Assistance in the following.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

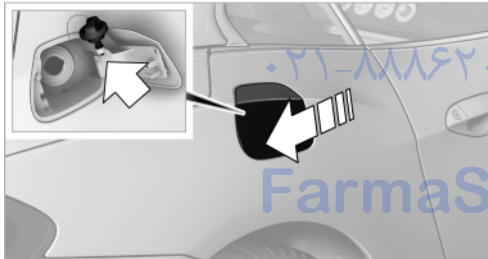
Refueling

Notes

- ⚠ Switch off the engine before refueling
- ⚠ Always switch off the engine before refueling; otherwise, fuel cannot be added to the tank and a message will be displayed. ◀
- ⚠ Observe when handling fuel
 - ▶ Take all precautionary measures and observe all applicable regulations when handling fuel.
- ▶ Do not carry any spare fuel containers in your vehicle. They can develop a leak and cause an explosion or cause a fire in the event of an accident. ◀

Fuel filler flap

Opening



1. Open fuel filler flap. To do so, lightly press the rear edge.
2. Turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Closing

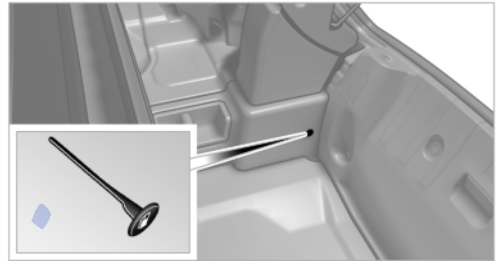
Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

- ⚠ Do not pinch the retaining strap
- ⚠ Do not pinch the retaining strap attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape.

A message is displayed if the cap is loose or missing. ◀

Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

In the event of a malfunction, you can release the fuel filler flap manually:



Pull the button in the trunk with the fuel pump symbol down. This releases the fuel filler flap.

Observe the following when refueling

- ⚠ Handling fuels
- ⚠ Obey safety regulations posted at the gas station. ◀

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid lifting the filler nozzle while filling the tank, as that would lead to:

- ▶ Premature pump shutoff.
- ▶ Reduced efficiency of the fuel-vapor recovery system.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity


Approx. 15.5 US gallons/55 liters, including the reserve capacity of 2.1 US gallons/8 liters.

- ⚠ Refuel below 30 miles/50 km
- ⚠ Refuel below a range of 30 miles/50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage may occur. ◀


Fuel

Fuel quality

For the best fuel economy, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

 Refuel with unleaded fuel only
Do not use leaded fuel as this would permanently damage the catalytic converter. ◀

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, i.e., E10, may be used for refueling.


 Do not refuel with ethanol E85
Do not refuel with E85, i.e., fuel with an ethanol content of 85 %, or with Flex Fuel, as this would damage the engine and fuel supply system. ◀


Gasoline quality


The engine is knock controlled. Therefore, you can refuel with different gasoline qualities.

It is recommended that you refuel with Super unleaded, 95 RON.

Unleaded fuel grades with 91 RON and higher are permissible.

 Minimum fuel grade
Do not use gasoline below 91 RON as this may damage the engine. ◀

 Refuel with unleaded fuel only
Do not use leaded fuel as this would permanently damage the catalytic converter. ◀

 Do not refuel with ethanol
Do not refuel with E85, i.e., fuel with an ethanol content of 85 %, or with Flex Fuel, as this would damage the engine and fuel supply system. ◀

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 91

This gasoline is highly recommended.

Gasoline with lower AKI


However, you may also use gasoline with less AKI.

The minimum AKI Rating is:

- ▷ Z4 sDrive30i: 87
- ▷ Z4 sDrive35i: 89
- ▷ Z4 sDrive35is: 89

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures.


This has no effect on the engine life.

 Minimum fuel grade
Do not use any gasoline below the minimum specified fuel grade; otherwise, engine damage may occur. ◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada.

Fuels containing up to and including 10 % ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8 % oxygen by weight, that is, 15 % MTBE or 3 % methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

 Minimum fuel grade
The use of poor-quality fuels may result in driveability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.

Should you encounter driveability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in unscheduled maintenance. ◀

BMW recommends BP fuels 

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵


FarmaSOS.com

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure

Information for your safety

It is not merely the tires' service life, but also driving comfort and, to a great extent, driving safety that depend on the condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure.

 Check the tire inflation pressure regularly. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed: at least twice a month and before a long trip. If you fail to observe this precaution, you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that may not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident. ◀

Checking the pressure

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When the tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure is higher.

After adjusting the tire inflation pressure, [reset the Tire Pressure Monitor](#), refer to page 84, or [reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor](#), refer to page 82.

Pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes approved and tire brands recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your service center.

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressures, observe the following:

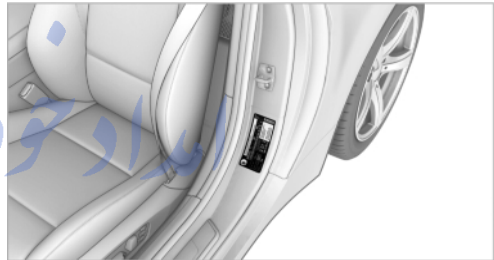
- ▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- ▷ Vehicle load.

- ▷ Maximum allowable driving speed.

Tire inflation pressures for driving up to 100 mph or 160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the column for traveling speeds up to 100 mph/160 km/h to achieve optimum driving comfort.


These tire inflation pressures can also be found on the driver's side door pillar when the driver's door is open.



 Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed.

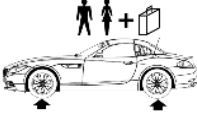
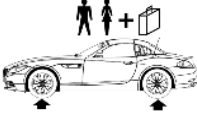
The maximum permissible speed for these tire pressures is 100 mph/160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed; otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur. ◀

Tire inflation pressures for driving above 100 mph or 160 km/h

 Adjust the tire inflation pressures. To drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the column for traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph or 160 km/h. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur. ◀



Observe all national and local maximum speed limits; otherwise, violations of the laws could occur.

Tire inflation pressures Z4 sDrive30i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
	Traveling speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h	
<p>All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires.</p> <p>Cold = ambient temperature</p>				
	without Sport Package:			
225/45 R 17 91 V	36/250	44/300	36/250	44/300
225/45 R 17 91 H M+S				
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL				
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	39/270	-	39/270
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	42/290	-	42/290
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	42/290	-	42/290
with Sport Package:				
225/45 R 17 91 W	36/250	44/300	36/250	44/300
225/45 R 17 91 H M+S				
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL				
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 W	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 W	-	39/270	-	39/270
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	36/250	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	42/290	-	45/310
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	42/290	-	44/300

More details on the [permissible load and weights, refer to page 224.](#)

Tire inflation pressures Z4 sDrive35i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
	Traveling speeds of up to 100 mph/ 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilo-pascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
	without Sport Package:			
225/45 R 17 91 H M +S	36/250	44/300	36/250	44/300
225/45 R 17 94 V M +S XL				
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	39/270	-	39/270
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	42/290	-	42/290
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	36/250		36/250	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	42/290	-	42/290
with Sport Package:				
225/45 R 17 91 H M +S	36/250	44/300	36/250	44/300
225/45 R 17 94 V M +S XL				
Front: 225/45 R 17 91W	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 W	-	39/270	-	39/270

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	36/250	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	42/290	-	45/310
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	42/290	-	44/300

More details on the [permissible load and weights](#), refer to page 224.

Tire inflation pressures Z4 sDrive35is

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
	Traveling speeds of up to 100 mph/ 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
	225/45 R 17 91 H M+S	36/250	44/300	36/250
225/45 R 17 94 V M +S XL				
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	38/260	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	45/310	-	45/310
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	44/300	-	44/300

More details on the [permissible load and weights](#), refer to page 224.

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

Example: 225/45 R 17 91 V
 225: nominal width in mm
 45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code
17: rim diameter in inches
91: load rating, not for ZR tires
V: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph/160 km/h
T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

DOT xxxx xxx 0710

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

0710: tire age

Tire age

The tire manufacturing date is contained in the tire identification mark: DOT ... 0710 means that the tire was manufactured in the week 7 of 2010. BMW recommends that you replace all tires after 6 years at most, even if some tires may last for 10 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA

Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C



All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. ◀

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



Temperature grade for this tire

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. ◀

RSC – Run-flat tires

The symbol identifying run-flat tires is a circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall, refer to page 195.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.

These have better winter properties than summer tires.

XL

Designation for specially reinforced tires.

Tire tread

Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

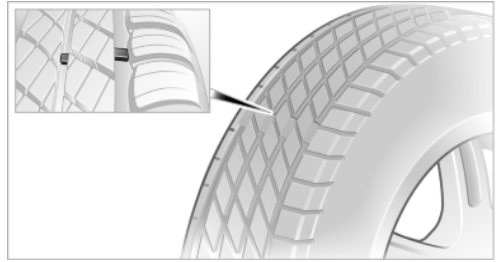
There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tread depth is less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

Inspect your tires often for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle defects:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations during driving.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.



In case of tire damage

If there are indications of tire damage, reduce your speed immediately and have the wheels and tires checked right away; otherwise, there is the increased risk of an accident.

Drive carefully to the next service center or tire shop.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed. ◀



Repair of tire damage

For safety reasons, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you do not have damaged tires repaired; they should be replaced. Otherwise, damage can occur as a result. ◀

Run-flat tires

Label



RSC label on the tire sidewall.

The wheels are composed of special rims and tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a pressure loss.

Driving with a damaged tire:

- ▷ Flat Tire Monitor FTM*, refer to page 82
- ▷ Tire Pressure Monitor TPM*, refer to page 83

Changing run-flat tires

For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of wear, replace tires at least every 6 years.


Manufacture date

On the sidewall:

DOT ... 0710: the tire was manufactured in week 7 of 2010.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting

 Information on mounting tires
Have mounting and balancing performed only by a service center or tire specialist.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. ◀


Wheel and tire combination

Information on the correct wheel-tire combination and rim versions for your vehicle can be obtained from your service center.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

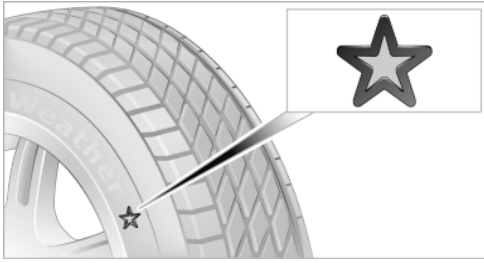
Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

 Approved wheels and tires
The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been approved for your particular vehicle model.

For example, despite having the same official size ratings, variations can lead to body contact and with it, the risk of severe accidents.

The manufacturer of your vehicle cannot evaluate non-approved wheels and tires to determine if they are suited for use, and therefore cannot ensure the operating safety of the vehicle if they are mounted. ◀

Recommended tire brands



For each tire size, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

With proper use, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling.

Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.



Retreaded tires

Possibly substantial variations in the design and age of the tire casing structures can limit service life and have a negative impact on road safety. ◀

Winter tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends winter tires for winter roads or at temperatures below +45 °F/+7 °C.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires do provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then display a corresponding sign in the field of vision. You can obtain this sign from the tire specialist or from your service center.



Maximum speed for winter tires

Do not exceed the maximum speed for the winter tires; otherwise, tire damage and accidents can occur. ◀

Run-flat tires

For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

Rotating wheels between axles

The manufacturer of your vehicle advises against swapping wheels between the front and rear axles.

This can impair the handling characteristics.

Rotating the tires is not permissible when using different types of tires.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Snow chains*

Only certain fine-link snow chains have been tested by BMW, classified as safe for use and recommended. Consult your service center for more information.

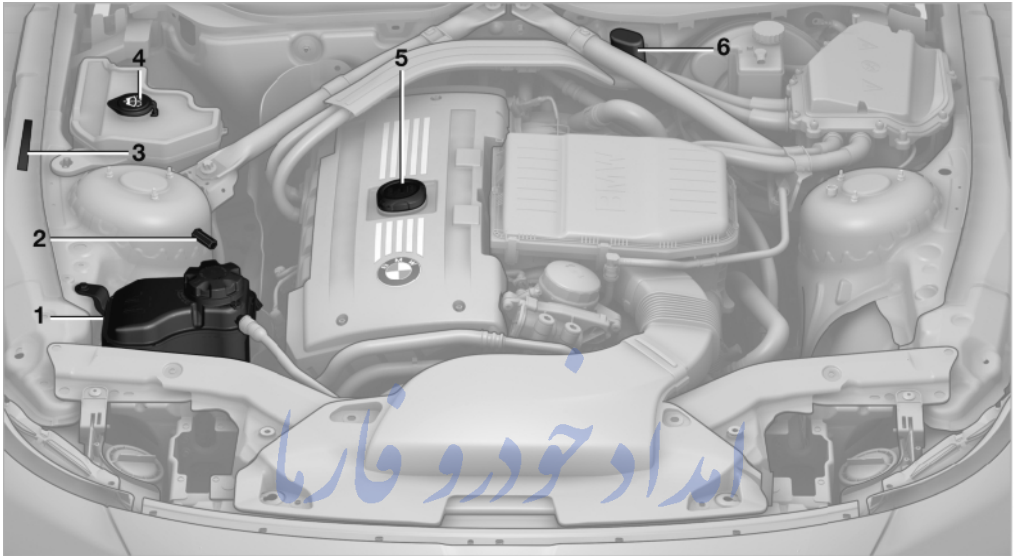
Snow chains must be mounted in pairs and on the rear wheels only. Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor if snow chains are mounted; otherwise, the instrument might issue an incorrect reading.

When driving with snow chains, it can be beneficial to **temporarily activate DTC**, refer to **page 89**.

Engine compartment

Important features in the engine compartment



- 1 Coolant expansion tank 200
- 2 Jump-starting connection, negative terminal 211
- 3 Vehicle identification number*
- 4 Filler neck for washer fluid for the headlamp and window washer system 55
- 5 Engine oil filler neck 200
- 6 Jump-starting connection, positive terminal 211

Hood

Opening the hood

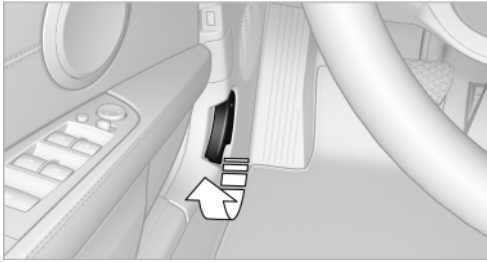
⚠ Working in the engine compartment
Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the necessary professional technical training.

If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the vehicle performed only by a service center.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. ◀


⚠ To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are resting against the windshield before you open the engine compartment. Do not open the engine hood before the engine has cooled down; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀

1. Pull the lever.



2. Push the release lever to the right and open the hood.





 Danger of injury when the hood is open

There is a danger of injury from protruding parts when the hood is open. ◀

Closing the hood



Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

-  Hood open when driving
If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving, pull over immediately and close it securely. ◀
-  Danger of pinching
Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Checking the oil level

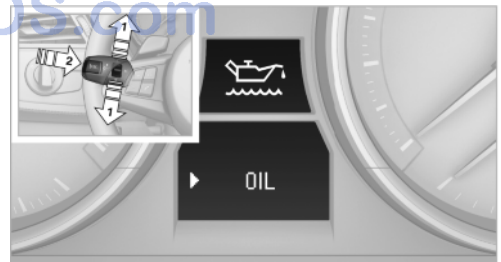
The concept

Your car is equipped with an electronic oil-level monitor.

Requirements


- ▶ The engine must be running and warm after the vehicle has been driven for at least 6.2 miles/10 km.
- ▶ The vehicle is stopped or being driven on a level roadway.

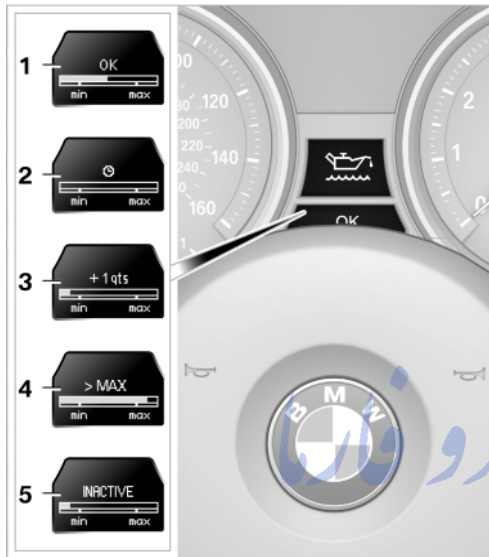
Display in the instrument cluster



1. Push button 1 in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the word "OIL".
2. Press button 2 in the turn indicator lever. The oil level is checked and the reading displayed.

Possible displays

 Too much engine oil
Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, surplus oil can lead to engine damage. ◀

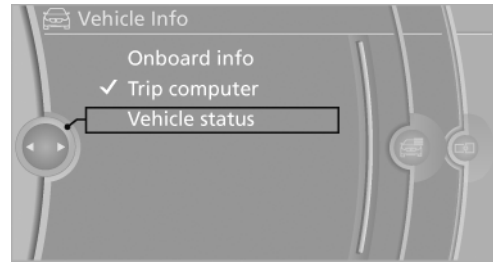


- 1 Oil level OK
- 2 Oil level is being checked. This can take about 3 minutes if the car is at a standstill on a level surface, or about 5 minutes while the car is on the move.
- 3 Oil level at minimum: add engine oil as soon as possible, but no more than 1 US quart/ 1 liter.
- 4 Oil level is too high.
- 5 The oil level sensor is defective. Do not add engine oil. It is possible to continue driving. Note the newly calculated remaining mileage until the next oil service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

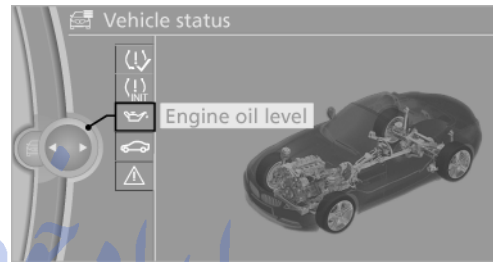
Display via iDrive

1. "Vehicle Info"


2. "Vehicle status"



3. "Engine oil level"

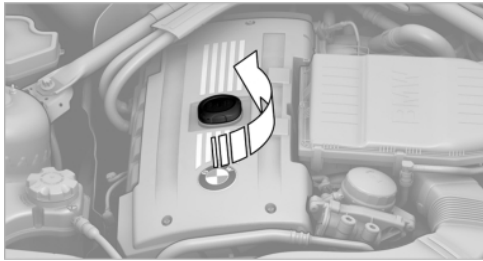


Possible messages

- ▷ "Engine oil level OK"
 - ▷ "Measurement not possible at this time."
Duration with the engine running: approx. 3 minutes.
Duration while driving: approx. 5 minutes.
If engine oil was added, it may take up to 30 minutes to obtain an oil level reading.
 - ▷ "Measuring engine oil level..."
 - ▷ "Engine oil level below minimum. Add 1 quart!"
Add a maximum of 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil at the next opportunity, refer also to Adding engine oil below.
 - ▷ "Engine oil level too high! Have this checked."
-  Too much engine oil
Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, surplus oil can lead to engine damage. ◀
- ▷ "Measurement inactive. Have this checked." Do not add engine oil. It is possible to continue driving. Note the newly calculated remaining mileage until the next oil service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

culated remaining mileage until the **next oil service**, refer to [page 69](#). Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil



Add a maximum quantity of 1 US quart/1 liter of oil only after a corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

! Add oil promptly
Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km; otherwise, engine damage could result. ◀

! Protect children
Keep oil, grease, etc., out of reach of children and heed the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks. ◀

Oil change

Have oil changed only at your service center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Oil types

Note

! No oil additives
Oil additives may lead to engine damage. ◀

Approved oil types

Your service center can advise you on which engine oils have been approved by the manufacturer of your vehicle.

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Only use approved BMW High Performance oil.

Approved oils belong to the following viscosity classes: SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40, and SAE 5W-30.

Alternative oil types

If the approved engine oils are not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of another oil with the following specification may be used.

API SM specifications or higher

BMW recommends 

Coolant

General information

! Danger of burns from hot engine
Do not open the cooling system while the engine is hot; otherwise, escaping coolant may cause burns. ◀

! Suitable additives
Only use suitable additives; otherwise, engine damage may occur. The additives are harmful to your health. ◀

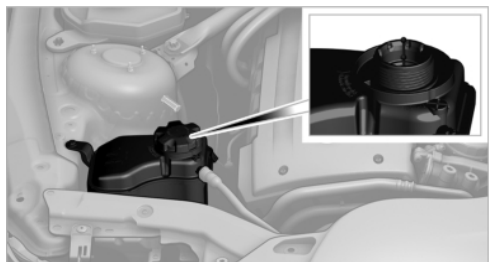
Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your vehicle. Ask your service center for suitable additives.

Checking the coolant level

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the expansion tank cap counterclockwise slightly to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
3. The coolant level is correct if it is between the maximum and minimum marks in the

filler neck, refer also to the diagram next to the filler neck.



4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
6. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

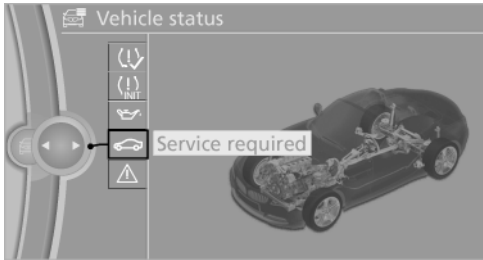
 Comply with the appropriate environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant additives.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Maintenance

BMW Maintenance System



The system obtains information about the road safety and operational reliability of the vehicle and takes into account aspects such as a timely vehicle check. The aim is to optimize maintenance procedures with a view to reducing the cost of running the vehicle.

Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of your vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service determines the maintenance requirements.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance you need to your user profile.

Details on the [service requirements](#), refer to [page 69](#), can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. Your service center will read out this data and suggest the right array of service procedures for your vehicle.

Therefore, hand your service specialist the remote control that you used most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

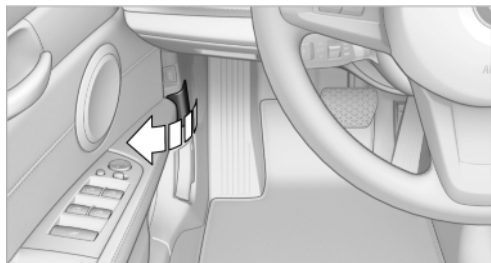
If this occurs, have a service center update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.


Maintenance and repair should be performed by your service center. Make sure to have regular maintenance procedures recorded in the vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models, and in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries are proof of regular maintenance.

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis



An OBD socket for testing components that are critical to exhaust composition is located under a cover on the driver's side.


Emissions values

 ▷ The warning lamp lights up: The emissions values are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.


▷ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

 Display of the previously described malfunctions on Canadian models.

Fuel cap

 The indicator lamp lights up. If the fuel cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system may conclude that fuel vapor is escaping. If the cap is then tightened, the display should go out in a short time.

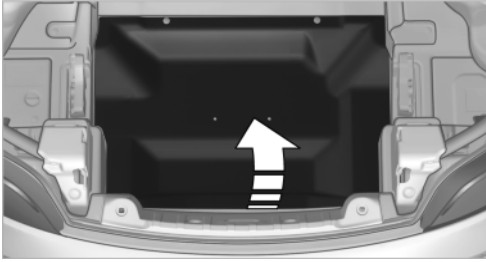
Data memory

Your vehicle records data relating to vehicle operation, faults and user settings. These data are stored in the remote control and can be read out with suitable devices, particularly when the ve-

hicle is serviced. The data obtained in this way provide valuable information for service processes and repair or for optimizing and developing vehicle functions further. In addition, if you signed a service contract for Assist, certain vehicle data can be sent directly from the vehicle to facilitate the desired services.

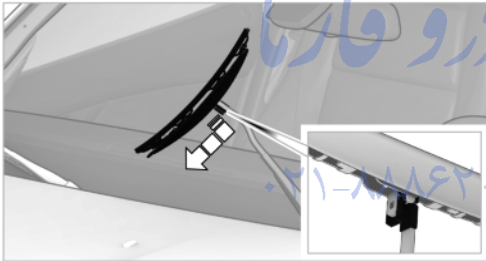
Replacing components

Tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is stored in a pouch under the trunk floor panel.

Replacing the wiper blades



1. Fold up the wiper arm.
2. Fold the wiper blade upwards.
3. Press the hook.
4. Pull the wiper blade downward out of the holder and remove it toward the top left, see arrow.

! Do not fold out the wiper arms
To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are resting against the windshield before you open the engine compartment. ◀

Lamp and bulb replacement

General information

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to your service center if you are unfamiliar with them or they are not described here.

You can obtain a selection of replacement bulbs at your service center.

! Danger of burns
Only change bulbs when they are cool; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned. ◀

! Working on the lighting system
When working on the lighting system, you should always switch off the lights affected to prevent short circuits.

To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer. ◀

! Do not touch the bulbs
Do not touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare hands, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life.

Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base. ◀

Light-emitting diodes LED

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle.

These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

! Do not remove the covers
Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours; otherwise, irritation of the retina could result. ◀

Headlamp glass


Condensation can form on the inside of the external lamps in cool or humid weather. When the

light is switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlamp glasses do not need to be changed.

If there is a large amount of moisture, e.g., water droplets form in the lamp, have the lamp checked by your service center.

Xenon headlamps

Because of the long life of these bulbs, the likelihood of failure is very low. Switching the lamps on and off frequently shortens their life.

 Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlamps

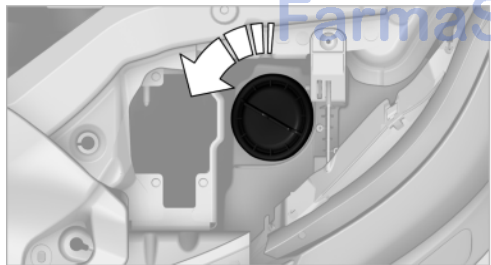
Have any work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed only by a service center.

Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is the danger of fatal injuries if work is carried out improperly. ◀

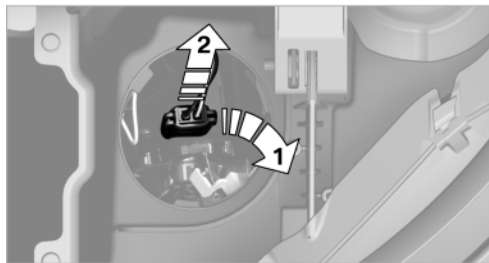
Parking and roadside parking lamps, daytime running lights

H8 bulb, 35 watts


1. Switch off the lamps and take the remote control out of the ignition lock.
2. Turn the upper access cover to the left and remove it, see arrow.



3. Turn the bulb by approx. 90°, see arrow 1, and pull it out, see arrow 2.



4. Disconnect the plug, change the bulb and reconnect the plug.
5. Insert the bulb and turn it until it stops.
6. Screw on the access cover tightly by turning it to the right.

 Attach the access cover carefully. Be careful when attaching the access cover; otherwise, it may leak, causing damage to the headlamp system. ◀

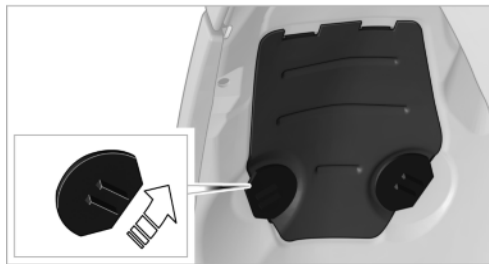
Turn signals, front

P24W bulb, 24 watt

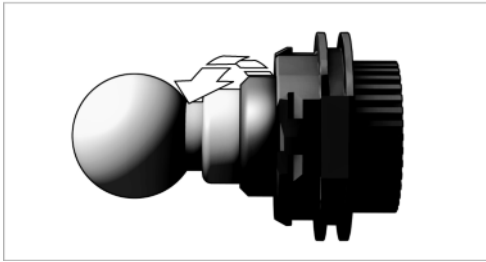
1. Turn the wheel outwards.



2. Turn both locks in the wheel house to the left and remove the cover.



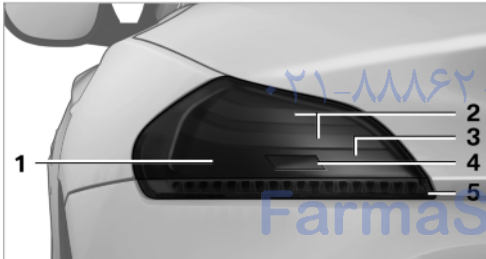
3. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove it.
4. Turn the bulb to the right, see arrow, and remove it.



5. Change the bulb and screw it into the bulb holder toward the left.
6. Insert the bulb holder and turn it to the right.
7. Reattach the cover.

Tail lamps

- ▷ Brake lamp, backup lamp: W16W bulb, 16 watt



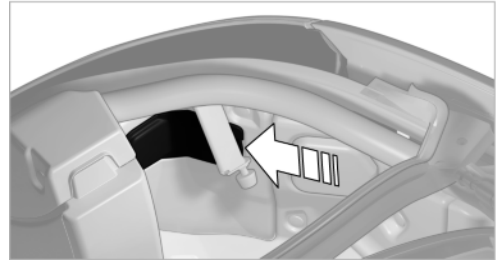
- 1 Brake lamp
- 2 Tail lamp, LED
- 3 Brake lamp
- 4 Backup lamp
- 5 Turn signal/dynamic brake lamp*, LED

The lamps of bulbs 2 and 5 use LED technology.

Follow the general instructions on [lamps and bulbs](#), refer to page 204.

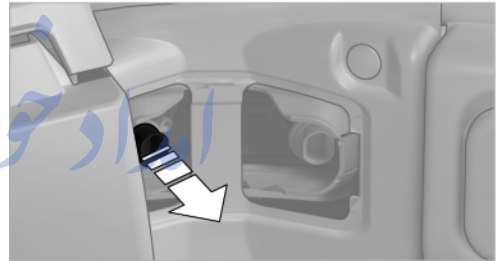
Please contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

Changing the backup lamp and inner brake lamp



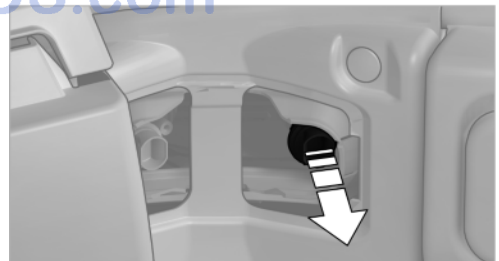
Press the locking mechanism in the trunk, see arrow, and remove the cover.

Inner brake lamp



Pull out the bulb holder and replace the bulb. Fasten the bulb holder and attach the cover.

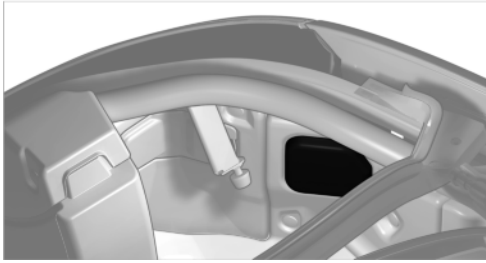
Backup lamp



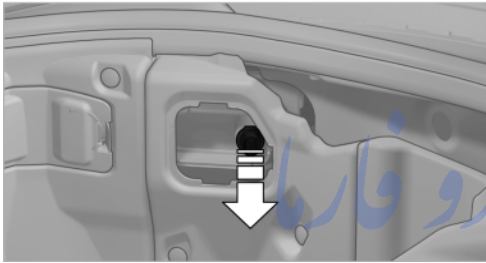
Pull out the bulb holder and replace the bulb. Fasten the bulb holder and attach the cover.

Changing the outer brake lamp

1. Remove the cover in the trunk.



2. Pull out the bulb holder, see arrow, and change the bulb.



3. Attach the bulb holder.
4. Reattach the cover.

License plate lamp, tail lamp, center brake lamp and turn signal

These lamps are made using LED technology. Please contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

Changing wheels

Notes

Your vehicle is equipped with **run-flat tires**, refer to [page 195](#), as standard equipment.

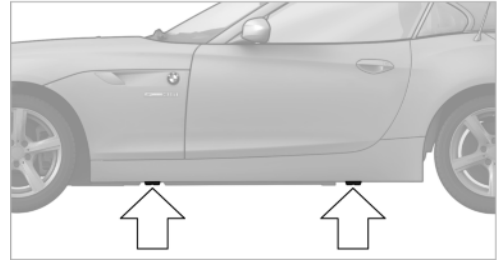
They do not need to be replaced immediately in the event of a puncture.

When mounting new tires or changing from summer to winter tires or vice versa, use run-flat tires for your own safety.

No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire.

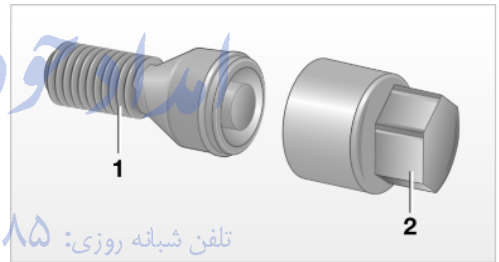
The tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from your service center.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located in the positions shown.

Lug bolt lock*



- 1 Lug bolt for adapter
- 2 Adapter, in onboard vehicle tool kit

Removing

1. Attach adapter 2 to the wheel lug.
2. Unscrew lug bolt 1.

Remove the adapter after screwing the lug bolt back on.


Vehicle battery

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery.

Your service center will be glad to advise you on questions regarding the battery.

Battery replacement

 Use approved vehicle batteries.

Only use vehicle batteries that have been approved for your vehicle by the manufacturer; otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and systems or functions may not be fully available. ◀

After a battery replacement, have the battery registered on the vehicle by your service center to ensure that all comfort functions are fully available.

Charging the battery

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the terminals in the engine compartment, refer to page 197, with the engine switched off.

Power failure

After a temporary power loss, some equipment needs to be reinitialized.

Individual settings need to be reprogrammed:

- ▷ Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory: store the positions again, refer to page 45.
- ▷ Time: update, refer to page 66.
- ▷ Date: update, refer to page 67.
- ▷ Radio station: store again, refer to page 142.
- ▷ Navigation system: wait for the operability of the navigation.
- ▷ Interior rearview mirror with digital compass: recalibrate, refer to page 103.

Disposing of old batteries




Have old batteries disposed of by your service center or bring them to a recycling center.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

Notes

 Replacing fuses
Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating; this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle. ◀

A pair of plastic tweezers is found on the current distributor.

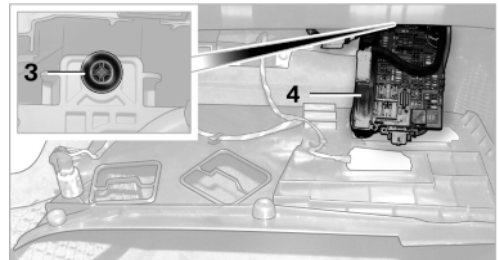
See the inside of the cover for information on fuse assignment.

Below the glove box

1. Remove the screws 1 using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit.
2. Remove cover 2, unwinding the cable to the footwell lamp* if necessary.



3. Release the shiny fastener 3.



4. Fold the current distributor 4 downward and pull forward.

The cover is reinstalled in reverse order.

Giving and receiving assistance

Hazard warning system



The button for the hazard warning system is located on the center console.

Emergency Request*

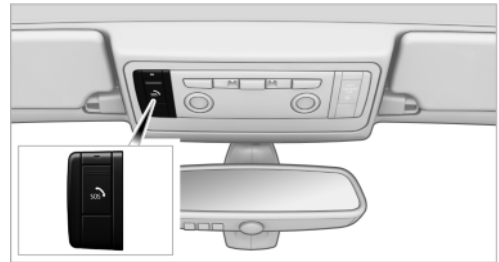
Requirements

- ▶ BMW Assist is activated. [Activate BMW Assist](#), refer to page 181.
- ▶ Radio ready state is activated.
- ▶ The BMW Assist system is logged on to a wireless network.
- ▶ The Assist system is operable.
- ▶ Equipment version with full preparation package mobile phone. This equipment makes it possible to send an Emergency Request even if no mobile phone is paired with the vehicle.

Once your service contract for BMW Assist expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW center without you having to visit a workshop. Once the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, Emergency Requests are not possible. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after a new contract has been signed.

Initiating an Emergency Request

1. Briefly press the cover flap to open.



2. Press the SOS button until the LED in the button lights up.

As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established, the LED flashes.

Once the BMW Assist Response Center has received your Emergency Request, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you. Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center will be able to initiate further steps to assist you under certain conditions.

If the circumstances allow this, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

In the event of a BMW Assist Emergency Request, data that are used to determine the necessary rescue measures, such as the current position of your vehicle if it can be established, are transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard on the hands-free system, the hands-free system may be malfunctioning. However, the BMW Assist Response Center may still be able to hear you.

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. This Automatic Collision No-

tification is not affected by the button being pressed.



Emergency Request not guaranteed

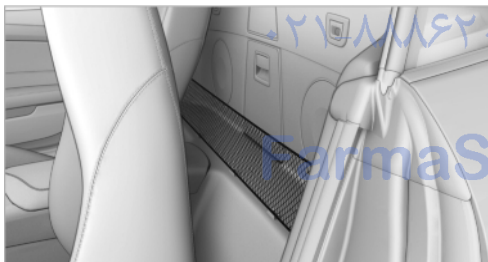
For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions. ◀

Warning triangle*



The warning triangle is located in a holder in the trunk lid. Press the tabs to take it out.

First aid kit*



The first aid pouch is located on the lateral storage shelf behind the seats.

Some of the articles contained in the first aid pouch have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any items promptly.

Roadside Assistance

Service availability

Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

The Roadside Assistance phone numbers can be found in the Contact brochure.

Roadside Assistance via BMW Assist*

The Assist information service can be used to establish a direct connection with Roadside Assistance to request **breakdown assistance**, refer to page 180.

Jump starting

Notes

If the battery is discharged, an engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.



Do not touch live parts

To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running. ◀

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.



Bodywork contact between vehicles

Make sure that there is no contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles;

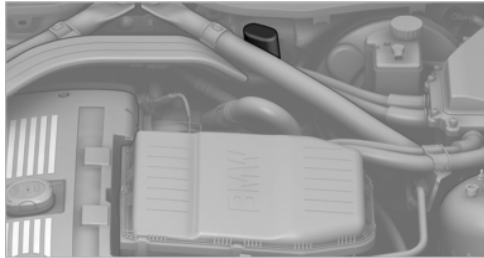
otherwise, there is the danger of short circuits. ◀

Starting aid terminals

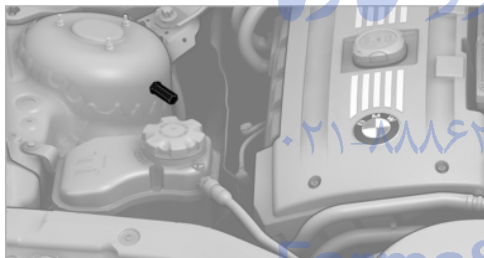


Connecting order

Connect the jumper cables in the correct order; otherwise, there is the danger of injury from sparking. ◀



The so-called starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.



The body ground or a special nut acts as the negative terminal.

Connecting jumper cables

1. Pull off the cap of the BMW starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the

battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle providing assistance.

5. Attach the other end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the other vehicle as usual. If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Tow-starting and towing

Tow fitting

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

It is stored in the [onboard vehicle tool kit under the floor panel in the trunk, refer to page 204](#).



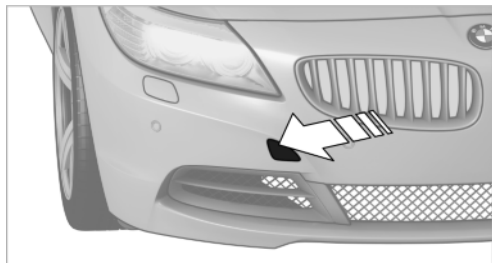
Tow fitting, information on use

- ▶ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▶ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▶ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g., do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Otherwise, damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur. ◀

Screw thread

Front



Release the cover panel in the bumper:
Press on the recess at the bottom left in the cover panel.




Rear



Release the cover panel in the bumper:
Press on the recess at the bottom center in the cover panel.


Towing

General information

-  Light towing vehicle
The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle response. ◀
-  Attaching the tow bar/tow rope correctly
Attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting; connecting it to other vehicle parts may cause damage. ◀
-  Do not tow when the electronics system has failed

Do not tow the vehicle when the electronics system has failed; otherwise, the electric steering lock cannot be unlocked and the vehicle cannot be steered. ◀

Observe before towing

-  The parking brake is blocked
The parking brake cannot be released manually.

When the parking brake is blocked, do not tow with the front axle lifted or the vehicle can be damaged.

Contact your service center. ◀


Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.



Automatic transmission

Selector lever in position N.


Change the selector lever position, refer to page 56.

-  Adhere to the towing speed and distance
Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h and a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km or damage to the transmission can occur. ◀


7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch

-  Manually release the transmission lock
-  Manually release the transmission lock, even if there is no malfunction involving the transmission. Otherwise, there is the danger that the transmission lock will be engaged automatically during towing. ◀

Manually release the transmission lock, refer to page 60.

-  Adhere to the towing speed and distance
Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h and a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km or damage to the transmission can occur. ◀

Observe during towing

-  Observe the notes on towing

Observe all notes on towing or vehicle damage or accidents can occur. ◀

- ▶ Make sure that the ignition is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals, and windshield wipers may be unavailable.
- ▶ When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. Consequently, more force needs to be applied when braking and steering.
- ▶ Larger steering wheel movements are required.
- ▶ Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.
- ▶ If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Towing methods

- ⚠ Do not lift the vehicle
- ⚠ Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result. ◀

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.
- ▶ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is attached offset.

Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

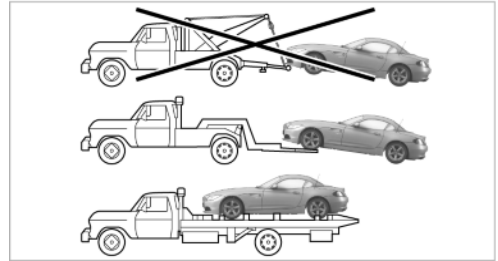
To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.

- ⚠ Attaching the tow rope correctly

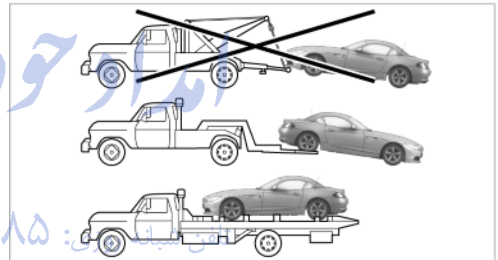
Only secure the tow rope on the tow fitting; otherwise, damage can occur when it is secured on other parts of the vehicle. ◀

Tow truck

Manual and automatic transmission:



7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch:



Have the BMW transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

- ⚠ Do not lift the vehicle
- ⚠ Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result. ◀
- ⚠ Secure the vehicle against rolling off
- Apply the parking brake after towing and secure the vehicle against rolling off if necessary.
- Have the operability of transmission position P checked by the service center. ◀

Tow-starting

- ⚠ Do not tow-start if the electrical system has failed

Do not tow-start the vehicle if the electrical system has failed; otherwise, the electric steering

lock cannot be unlocked and the vehicle cannot be steered. ◀

Vehicles with an automatic transmission or 7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch cannot be tow-started at all.

If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine by [jump-starting, refer to page 210](#), it. If the vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter, only tow-start while the engine is cold.


1. Switch on the hazard warning system and comply with local regulations.
2. [Switch on the ignition, refer to page 50](#).
3. Shift into 3rd gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch pressed and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch completely again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope, and switch off the hazard warning system.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Car washes

Notes

 Steam jets or high-pressure washers
When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, hold them a sufficient distance away and use a maximum temperature of 140 °F/ 60 °C.

Holding them too close or using excessively high pressures or temperatures can cause damage or preliminary damage that may then lead to long-term damage.

Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer. ◀

 Cleaning sensors/cameras with high-pressure washers

When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the seals of the retractable hardtop and the exterior sensors and cameras, for Park Distance Control*, for instance, for extended periods of time and only from a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm. ◀

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter.

Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Washing in automatic car washes

Your vehicle can be washed in automatic car washes right from the start.

Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.


Notes

Note the following:

- ▶ Make sure that the wheels and tires are not damaged by the transport mechanisms.
- ▶ Fold in the exterior mirrors; otherwise, they may be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.

- ▶ Deactivate the rain sensor, refer to page 54, to avoid unintentional wiper activation.

- ▶ Unscrew the road antenna*.

 Guide rails in car washes
Avoid car washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, the vehicle body could be damaged. ◀

Before driving into a car wash

The vehicle is able to roll if the following steps are taken.

Manual transmission

1. Shift to neutral.
2. Release the parking brake, refer to page 52.
3. Switch the engine off.

Automatic transmission*

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock, even with Comfort Access.
2. Move the selector lever to position N.
3. Release the parking brake, refer to page 52.
4. Switch the engine off.
5. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock so that the vehicle can roll.

7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch*

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock, even with Comfort Access.
2. Engage transmission position N.
3. Release the parking brake, refer to page 52.
4. Switch the engine off.
5. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock so that the vehicle can roll.

Transmission position P is engaged automatically:

- ▷ Automatically after approx. 30 minutes.
- ▷ When the remote control is removed from the ignition lock.

Headlamps

- ▷ Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or caustic cleansers.
- ▷ Soak areas that have been soiled e.g. due to insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.
- ▷ Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

Retractable hardtop

When you open a wet hardtop, water drops may run into the cargo area. If necessary, remove items from the trunk beforehand to avoid water stains or soiling.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced and corrosion of the brake discs can occur.

Vehicle care

Car care products

BMW recommends using cleaning and care products from BMW, since these have been tested and approved.



Car care and cleaning products

Follow the instructions on the container.

When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows.

Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles.

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. ◀

Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention.

Environmental influences can act on the vehicle paint. Tailor the frequency and extent of your car care to these influences.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently as dust and dirt are more noticeable.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Suitable care products are available from the service center.

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If they are very dirty, e.g., beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.



Damage from Velcro® fasteners

Open Velcro® fasteners on pants or other articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed. ◀

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

Use wheel cleaner, particularly during the winter months. Do not use aggressive, acidic, strongly alkaline or abrasive cleaners, or steam jets

above 140 °F/60 °C; follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Chrome surfaces*

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components

Aside from water, treat only with rubber cleansers.

When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing car care products in order to avoid damage or reduced noise damping.

Fine wood parts*

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components


These include:

- ▷ Headliner.
- ▷ Lamp lenses.
- ▷ Instrument cluster cover.
- ▷ Matte black spray-coated components.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Moisten the cloth lightly and use plastic cleanser, if necessary.


Do not soak the headliner.

 Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents

Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such; this could lead to surface damage. ◀

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

 No chemical cleaning

Do not clean chemically; this can destroy the webbing. ◀

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the reels to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats*

Floor mats can be removed from the passenger compartment for cleaning.

If they are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or an interior cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

 Cleaning the interior

When cleaning the interior, do not move both seats all the way forward while moving them to their uppermost position and leaning the backrests forward. Otherwise, the seats could hit and damage the seal on the windshield and the sun visor. ◀

Sensors/cameras

To clean the sensors or cameras of equipment such as the High-beam Assistant* or Park Distance Control PDC*, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

Displays/screens

Use a microfiber cloth to clean the Control Display or instrument cluster, for example.

 Cleaning displays

Do not use chemical or household cleansers.

Keep all fluids and moisture away from the unit. Otherwise, they could affect or damage surfaces or electrical components.

Avoid pressing too hard when cleaning and do not use abrasive materials; otherwise, damage can result. ◀

Long-term vehicle storage

Your service center can advise you on what to consider when storing the vehicle for longer than three months.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲-۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۳۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Reference

This chapter contains technical data, short commands for the voice activation system, and an index that will quickly take you to the information you need.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Technical data

Engine specifications

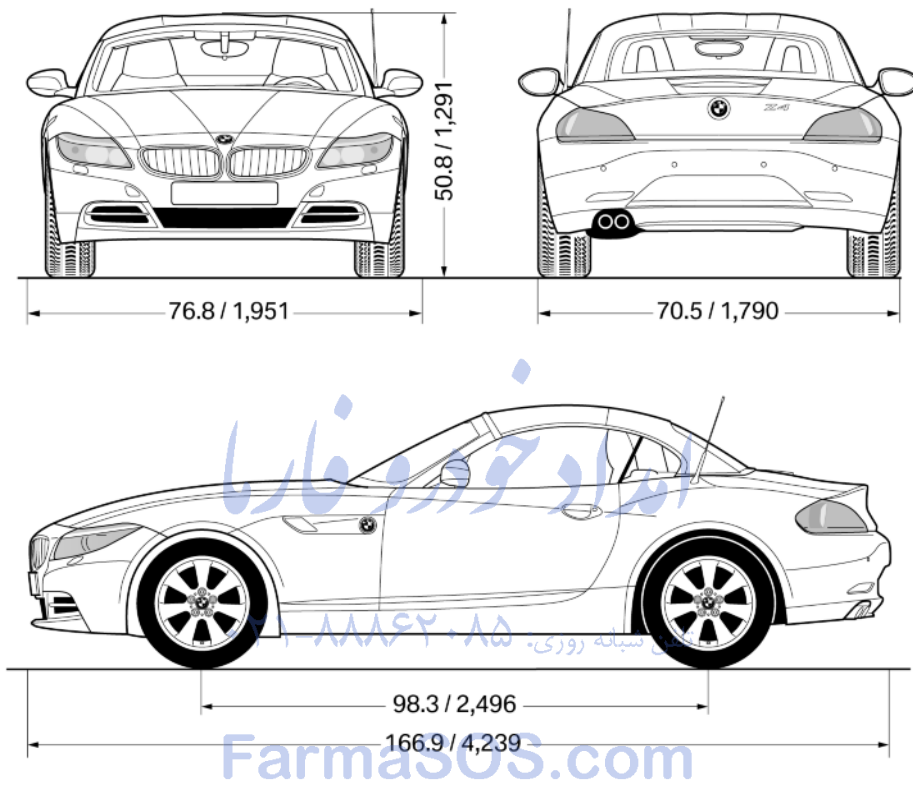
Z4 sDrive30i		
Displacement	cu in/cm ³	182.8/2,996
No. of cylinders		6
Maximum output	hp	255
at engine speed	rpm	6,600
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	220/298
at engine speed	rpm	2,600

Z4 sDrive35i		
Displacement	cu in/cm ³	181.8/2,979
No. of cylinders		6
Maximum output	hp	300
at engine speed	rpm	5,800
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	300/407
at engine speed	rpm	1,400 - 5,000

Z4 sDrive35is		
Displacement	cu in/cm ³	181.8/2,979
No. of cylinders		6
Maximum output	hp	335
at engine speed	rpm	5,900
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	335/454
at engine speed	rpm	1,500

Dimensions

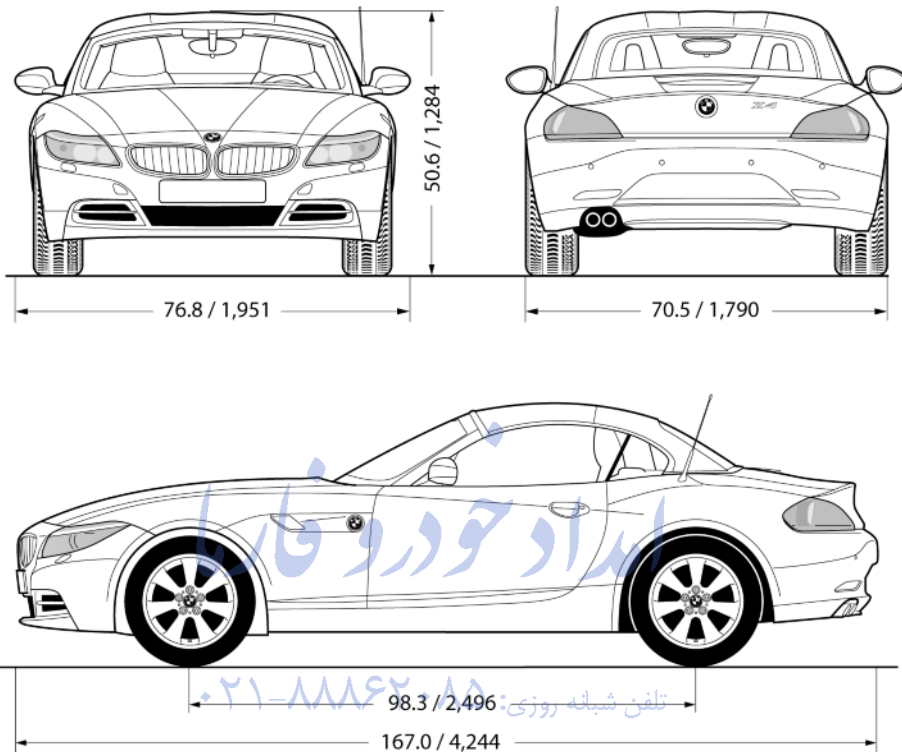
Z4 sDrive30i, Z4 sDrive35i



WMWLF050/M

All dimensions given in inches/mm.

Z4 sDrive35is



FarmaSOS.com

All dimensions given in inches/mm.

Smallest turning circle

Ø: 35.1 ft/10.7 m

Weights

Z4 sDrive30i

Approved gross vehicle weight

Manual transmission lbs/kg 3,924/1,780

With automatic transmission lbs/kg 3,990/1,810

Load lbs/kg 562/255

Approved front axle load lbs/kg 1,808/820

Z4 sDrive30i		
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,227/1,010
Trunk capacity	cu ft/l	6.4 - 10.9/180 - 310

Z4 sDrive35i		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,134/1,875
With automatic transmission	lbs/kg	4,178/1,895
Load	lbs/kg	562/255
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	1,918/870
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,271/1,030
Trunk capacity	cu ft/l	6.4 - 10.9/180 - 310

Z4 sDrive35is		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	—
With automatic transmission	lbs/kg	4,178/1,895
Load	lbs/kg	562/255
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	1,918/870
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,271/1,030
Trunk capacity	cu ft/l	6.4 - 10.9/180 - 310

Capacities

		Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	Approx. 14.5/55 Fuel quality, refer to page 187
Including reserve of	US gal/liters	Approx. 2.1/8.0
Window washer system Including headlamp washers	US qt/liters	Approx. 6.3/6.0 Details, refer to page 55

Short commands for voice activation system

General information

Instructions for voice activation system, refer to page 24.

To have the available spoken instructions read aloud ›Voice commands‹

Useful short commands

Function	Command
Opening the music collection	›Music collection‹
Opening the tone settings	›Tone‹
Opening the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the contacts*	›Contacts‹
Displaying the phone book*	›Phonebook‹
Opening BMW Assist*	›B M W Assist‹
Opening the destination entry*	›Enter address‹

CD/multimedia

CD/DVD drive

Function	Command
Playing back a CD	›C D on‹
Selecting a CD	›Select C D‹
Selecting a CD and track	›C D ... track ... ‹ e.g., CD 3 track 5
Selecting a track	›C D track ... ‹ e.g., track 5
Opening the CD and multimedia menu	›C D and multimedia‹
CD and DVD	›C D‹
Selecting a DVD	›D V D ... ‹ For instance, DVD 3
Displaying entertainment details on the split screen	›Entertainment details‹

Music collection

Function	Command
Calling up the current playback	›Current playback‹
Opening the music collection	›Music collection‹
Playing the music collection	›Music collection on‹
Searching for music; opening the menu	›Music search‹
Playing back the most frequently played tracks	›Top fifty‹

External devices

Function	Command
Opening external devices	›External devices‹

Tone

Function	Command
Opening the tone settings	›Tone‹

Radio

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FM

Function	Command
Calling up the radio	›Radio‹
Calling up an FM station	›F M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual‹
Calling up a frequency	›Frequency ... megahertz‹ e.g., 93.5 megahertz or frequency 93.5
Selecting the frequency range	›Select frequency‹
Calling up a station	›Select station‹
Calling up a station directly	›Station ... ‹ e.g., W-PLJ

AM

Function	Command
Calling up an AM station	›A M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual‹
Calling up a frequency	›Frequency ... Kilohertz‹ e.g., frequency 753 or 753 kilohertz

Satellite radio

Function	Command
Calling up the satellite radio	›Satellite radio‹
Switching on the satellite radio	›Satellite radio on‹
Selecting a satellite radio channel	›Select satellite radio‹ e.g., satellite radio channel 2

Stored stations

Function	Command
Opening the stored stations	›Presets‹
Choosing a stored station	›Select preset‹
Selecting a stored station	›Preset ... ‹ e.g., stored station 2

Telephone

FarmaSOS.com

Function	Command
Opening the Telephone menu	›Telephone‹
Displaying the phone book	›Phonebook‹
Redialing	›Redial‹
Displaying accepted calls	›Received calls‹
Dialing a phone number	›Dial number‹
List of messages	›Messages‹
Bluetooth devices	›Bluetooth‹

Navigation

General information

Function	Command
Navigation menu	›Navigation‹
Opening the destination input	›Enter address‹
Entering the address	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance	›Guidance‹
Starting destination guidance	›Start guidance‹
Terminating destination guidance	›Stop guidance‹
Opening the home address	›Home address‹
Opening the route criteria	›Route preference‹
Opening the route	›Route information‹
Switching on the spoken instructions	›Switch on voice instructions‹
Repeating a spoken instruction	›Repeat voice instructions‹
Switching off the spoken instructions	›Switch off voice instructions‹
Displaying the address book	›Address book‹
Displaying the last destinations	›Last destinations‹
Opening the traffic bulletins	›Traffic Info‹
Special destinations	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Displaying the map	›Map‹
Map facing north	›Map facing north‹
Map in the direction of travel	›Map in direction of travel‹
Perspective map	›Map perspective view‹
Automatic scaling of the map*	›Map with automatic scaling‹
Scale...feet	›Map scale ... feet‹
Scale...meters	›Map scale ... meters‹ e.g., map scale 100 meters

Function	Command
Scale...kilometers	›Map scale ... kilometers‹ e.g., map scale 5 kilometers
Scale...miles	›Map scale ... miles‹ e.g., map scale 5 miles

Split screen settings

Function	Command
Split screen	›Switch on splitscreen‹
Switching off the split screen	›Turn off split screen‹
Adapting the split screen	›Split screen content‹
Split screen, map facing north	›Split screen map facing north‹
Split screen, current position	›Split screen current position‹
Split screen, direction of travel	›Split screen map in direction of travel‹
Split screen, perspective	›Split screen perspective‹
Split screen, wider intersection zoom	›Splitscreen Exit ramp view‹
Split screen scale...feet	›Split screen scale ... feet‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 feet
Split screen scale...meters	›Split screen scale ... meters‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 meters
Split screen scale...kilometers	›Split screen scale ... kilometers‹ e.g., split screen scale 5 kilometers
Split screen scale...miles	›Split screen scale ... miles‹ e.g., split screen scale 5 miles
Split screen, highlight the traffic situation	›Split screen, Traffic conditions‹
Split screen, computer	›Split screen on board info‹
Split screen, trip computer	›Splitscreen trip computer‹
Automatically scaling the split screen	›Split screen automatic scaling‹

Destination guidance with intermediate destinations

Function	Command
New destination entry	›Enter address‹
Trip list	›Stored trips‹

Contacts

Function	Command
My contacts	›My contacts‹
Opening the contacts	›Contacts‹
New contact	›New contact‹

BMW Assist

Function	Command
Opening BMW Assist*	›B M W Assist‹
Opening BMW Search*	›B M W Search‹

Vehicle information

Computer

Function	Command
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the trip computer	›Trip computer‹

Vehicle

Function	Command
Opening the vehicle information	›Vehicle info‹
Opening the vehicle status	›Vehicle status‹

Adjusting

Function	Command
Opening the main menu	›Main menu‹
Opening the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the options	›Options‹
Control Display settings	›Control display‹
Opening the time and date settings	›Time and date‹
Opening the language and unit settings	›Language and units‹
Opening the speed limit settings	›Speed‹
Opening the light settings	›Lighting‹
Opening the door lock settings	›Door locks‹

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲-۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

- ABS, Antilock Brake System **87**
- Acceleration assistant, refer to Launch Control **60**
- Accessories and parts **7**
- Accident, refer to Emergency Request, initiating **209**
- Activated charcoal filter with automatic climate control **100**
- Adaptive brake light, refer to Brake force display **86**
- Adaptive light control **76**
- Additives
 - Coolant **200**
- Additives, oil **200**
- After washing vehicle **216**
- Airbags **80**
- Airbags
 - Indicator/warning lamps **82**
- Air circulation, refer to Recirculated air mode **96, 100**
- Air conditioner **96**
- Air conditioning mode
 - Air conditioner **96**
 - Automatic climate control **98**
 - Ventilation **97, 100**
- Air distribution
 - Automatic **99**
 - Individual **96**
 - Manual **96**
- Air flow rate **96, 99**
- Airing, refer to Ventilation **97, 100**
- Air outlets, refer to Air vents **95**
- Air pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure **189**
- Air supply
 - Air conditioner **96**
 - Automatic climate control **98**
 - Ventilation **97, 100**
- Air vents **95**
- Air vents
 - Refer to Ventilation **97, 100**
- Alarm system **36**
- Alarm system
 - Avoiding unintentional alarms **37**
 - Ending an alarm **36**
 - Interior motion sensor **37**
 - Tilt alarm sensor **37**
- All around the headliner **17**
- All-season tires, refer to Winter tires **196**
- Alternating-code hand-held transmitter **102**
- Alternative oil types **200**
- AM/FM station **142**
- Announcement, navigation, refer to Spoken instructions **132**
- Antifreeze
 - Coolant **200**
 - Washer fluid **55**
- Antilock Brake System, ABS **87**
- Anti-slip control, refer to DSC **87**
- Anti-theft protection **30**
- Anti-theft protection, lug bolts **207**
- Approved axle loads, refer to Weights **224**
- Approved engine oils **200**
- Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights **224**
- Armrest, refer to Center armrest **107**
- Arrival time, refer to Computer **64**
- Assist **179**
- Assistance, Roadside Assistance **210**
- Assistance systems, refer to Driving stability control systems **87**
- Assistance when driving off **89**
- Audio device, external **108**
- Audio playback **149**
- Automatic air distribution **99**
- Automatic air flow rate **99**
- Automatic car wash **215**
- Automatic climate control
 - Automatic air distribution **99**
- Automatic cruise control **91**
- Automatic Curb Monitor **46**
- Automatic headlamp control **76**
- Automatic recirculated air control **100**
- Automatic transmission with Steptronic **56**
- Automatic transmission with Steptronic
 - Interlock **56**
 - Overriding selector lever lock **57**
 - Shiftlock, refer to Changing selector lever positions **56**
- AUTO program with automatic climate control **99**
- AUX-IN port **108, 160**
- Average fuel consumption **64**
- Average fuel consumption
 - Setting the units **66**
- Average speed **64**
- Axle loads, refer to Weights **224**

B

- Backrest curvature, refer to Lumbar support **43**

Backrests, refer to Seat adjustment **42**

Backrest width adjustment **43**

Backup lamps
– Bulb replacement **206, 207**

Balance **140**

Band-aids, refer to First aid kit **210**

Bar, refer to Towing methods **213**

Bass **140**

Battery
– Disposal **36, 208**
– Power failure **208**
– Remote control **28**
– Replacement in the remote control **36**
– Replacement, vehicle battery **208**
– Vehicle **207**

Before entering the car wash **215**

Being towed **212**

Belts, refer to Safety belts **44**

Belt tensioners, refer to Safety belts **44**

Beverage holder, refer to Cupholder **109**

Blower, refer to Air flow rate **96, 99**

Bluetooth connection, activating/deactivating **167**

BMW Assist **179**

BMW homepage **6**

BMW Internet page **6**

BMW Maintenance System **202**

BMW Search **181**

Bottle holder, refer to Cupholder **109**

Brake assistant, refer to Dynamic Brake Control **87**

Brake discs, breaking in **112**

Brake force display **86**

Brake force distribution, electronic **87**

Brake lamps
– Brake force display **86**
– Bulb replacement **206, 207**

Brake lights, adaptive **86**

Brake pads, breaking in **112**

Brakes
– ABS **87**

Braking
– Notes **113**
– Parking brake **52**

Braking safely **113**

Breakdown assistance **210**

Breaking in **112**

Brightness of Control Display **68**

Bulbs, replacing, refer to Lamps and bulbs **204**

Button for starting the engine, refer to Start/Stop button **50**

Bypassing, see starting aid **210**

California Proposition 65 Warning **7**

Camera, care **217**

Can holder, refer to Cupholder **109**

Capacities
– Fuel tank, refer to Filling capacities **225**
– Trunk, refer to Weights **224**

Car battery **207**

Car care products **216**

Care, vehicle **216**

Cargo **114**

Cargo, securing **105**

Cargo straps, securing cargo **115**

Car key, refer to Integrated key/remote control **28**

Carpet, care **217**

Car phone
– Installation location, refer to Center armrest **107**

Car vacuum cleaner, connecting, refer to Connecting electrical devices **104**

Car wash **215**

Car wash
– With Comfort Access **35**

Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system **112**

Category details, special destinations **125**

CBS Condition Based Service **202**

CD/DVD **149**

CD/DVD changer **153**

CDs, storing **156**

Cell phone **166**

Cell phone, installation location, refer to Center armrest **107**

Center armrest **107**

Center brake lamp
– Bulb replacement **207**

Center console, refer to Around the center console **16**

Central locking
– Comfort Access **34**
– From the inside **32**
– Setting the unlocking characteristics **30**

Central locking system
– From the outside **29**
– Principle **29**

Central screen, refer to Control Display **18**

Changes, technical, refer to Safety **6**

Changing wheels/tires **195**

Chassis number, refer to Engine compartment **197**

Check Control **71**

Children, transporting safely **48**

Child restraint fixing system **48**

Child seats, refer to Transporting children safely **48**

Chrome parts, care **217**

Circulation of air, refer to Recirculated air mode **96, 100**

Clock **62**

Clock
– 12h/24h format **67**
– Setting the time and date **67**

- Closing
 - From the inside [32](#)
 - From the outside [30](#)
 - Cockpit [12](#)
 - Cold start, refer to Starting the engine [51](#)
 - Combination instrument, refer to Instrument cluster [14](#)
 - Combination switch
 - Refer to Washer/wiper system [54](#)
 - Comfort Access
 - Battery replacement [36](#)
 - In a car wash [35](#)
 - Comfort area, refer to Around the center console [16](#)
 - Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock [50](#)
 - Compartments, refer to Storage compartments [108](#)
 - Compass [103](#)
 - Computer [63](#)
 - Computer
 - Displays on the Control Display [64](#)
 - Concierge service [180](#)
 - Condensation under the vehicle [114](#)
 - Condition Based Service CBS [202](#)
 - Confirmation signals for locking/unlocking the vehicle [31](#)
 - Consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption [64](#)
 - Contacts [176](#)
 - Control Display [18](#)
 - Control Display, care [217](#)
 - Control Display, settings [68](#)
 - Controller [18](#)
 - Controls and displays [12](#)
 - Control systems, driving stability [87](#)
 - Convenience operation [32](#)
 - Convenience operation
 - Retractable hardtop [30](#)
 - Window [30](#)
 - Convenient loading [31](#)
 - Convertible
 - Enlarging the trunk [39](#), [104](#)
 - Coolant
 - Checking the level [200](#)
 - Temperature [63](#)
 - Cooling, maximum [99](#)
 - Cooling system, refer to Coolant [200](#)
 - Corrosion on brake discs [114](#)
 - Courtesy lamps, refer to Interior lamps [78](#)
 - Cradle for telephone or mobile phone
 - Refer to Snap-in adapter in center armrest storage compartment [107](#)
 - Cruise control [91](#)
 - Cruise control
 - Malfunction [92](#)
 - Cupholder [109](#)
 - Curb weight, refer to Weights [224](#)
 - Current location, storing [123](#)
 - Customer Relations [182](#)
 - Cylinders, number of, refer to Engine data [222](#)
- ## D
- Damage, tires [194](#)
 - Dashboard lighting, refer to Instrument lighting [78](#)
 - Dashboard, refer to Cockpit [12](#)
 - Data, technical [222](#)
 - Data, technical
 - Dimensions [223](#)
 - Engine [222](#)
 - Filling capacities [225](#)
 - Weights [224](#)
 - Date
 - Date format [67](#)
 - Setting [67](#)
 - Daytime running lights [76](#)
 - DBC Dynamic Brake Control [87](#)
 - DCC, refer to Cruise control [91](#)
 - Defogging windows [97](#)
 - Defroster
 - Rear window [97](#), [100](#)
 - Defrosting windows [97](#)
 - Destination entry, navigation [121](#)
 - Destination entry via the address book [123](#)
 - Destination guidance [130](#)
 - Destination guidance with intermediate destinations [128](#)
 - Digital clock [62](#)
 - Digital compass [103](#)
 - Digital radio [143](#)
 - Dimming mirrors [47](#)
 - Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals [53](#)
 - Displacement, refer to Engine data [222](#)
 - Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting [78](#)
 - Displays and controls [12](#)
 - Displays, care [217](#)
 - Displays, refer to Instrument cluster [14](#)
 - Disposal
 - Coolant [200](#)
 - Remote control battery [36](#)
 - Vehicle battery [208](#)
 - Distance control, refer to PDC [93](#)
 - Divided screen view, split screen [22](#)
 - Door key, refer to Remote control with integrated key [28](#)
 - Door lock [32](#)
 - Doors, manual operation [32](#)
 - Doors, unlocking and locking
 - Confirmation signals [31](#)
 - From the inside [32](#)
 - From the outside [30](#)
 - DOT Quality Grades [193](#)
 - Draft-free ventilation [97](#), [100](#)
 - Drive mode [59](#)
 - Drive-off assistant [89](#)
 - Drive-off assistant, refer to DSC [87](#)
 - Drive position, engaging, refer to Transmission positions [58](#)
 - Driving instructions, breaking in [112](#)
 - Driving notes, general [112](#)

Driving stability control systems **87**
 Driving tips **112**
 DSC Dynamic Stability Control **87**
 DTC Dynamic Traction Control **87**
 Dual clutch transmission **58**
 Dual clutch transmission
 – Kickdown **59**
 DVD/CD **149**
 DVD/CD notes **155**
 DVD settings **152**
 DVDs, storing **156**
 DVD, video **151**
 Dynamic Brake Control
 DBC **87**
 Dynamic destination guidance **131**
 Dynamic Driving Control **88**
 Dynamic Stability Control
 DSC **87**
 Dynamic Traction Control
 DTC **87**

E

EBV electronic brake-force distribution **87**
 Electrical malfunction
 – Door lock **32**
 – Driver's door **32**
 – Fuel filler flap **186**
 – M dual clutch transmission with Drivelogic **60**
 Electric seat adjustment **43**
 Electric steering wheel lock
 – With Comfort Access **34**
 Electronic brake-force distribution **87**
 Electronic engine oil level check **198**
 Electronic Stability Program
 ESP, refer to DSC **87**
 Emergency activation, automatic transmission, refer to Overriding selector lever lock **57**

Emergency operation
 – Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually **186**
 Emergency Request **209**
 Emergency service, refer to Roadside Assistance **210**
 Emergency unlocking
 – Trunk lid, from the inside **34**
 Engine compartment **197**
 Engine coolant, refer to Coolant **200**
 Engine data **222**
 Engine oil, adding **200**
 Engine oil additives **200**
 Engine oil, checking the level **198**
 Engine oil, filling capacity **225**
 Engine oil temperature **63**
 Engine oil types, alternative **200**
 Engine oil types, approved **200**
 Engine, overheating, refer to Coolant temperature **63**
 Engine power, refer to Engine data **222**
 Engine, RPM **222**
 Engine start, Help **210**
 Engine, starting **51**
 Engine, starting
 – Comfort Access **34**
 – Start/Stop button **50**
 Engine, stopping, Start/Stop button **50**
 Engine, switching off **51**
 Engine temperature **63**
 Entry lamps, refer to Interior lamps **78**
 Equalizer **140**
 Equipment, interior **101**
 Error messages, refer to Check Control **71**
 ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC **87**
 Exchanging wheels/tires **195**
 Exhaust system **112**
 Exterior mirrors **45**

Exterior mirrors
 – Automatic dimming **47**
 – Automatic heating **46**
 – Folding in and out **46**
 – Setting **45**
 External audio device **108**
 External devices **160**
 External start **210**
 External temperature display **62**
 External temperature display
 – Changing the unit of measure **66**
 – On computer **66**
 External temperature warning **62**
 Eyes for securing cargo **115**

F

Fader **140**
 Failure messages, refer to Check Control **71**
 Failure of an electrical accessory **208**
 False alarm
 – Avoiding unintentional alarms **37**
 – Ending an alarm **36**
 Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts **44**
 Fasten safety belts reminder
 – Refer to Safety belt reminder **44**
 Filter
 – Refer to Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter with automatic climate control **100**
 – Refer to Microfilter for air conditioner **97**
 Fine wood, care **217**
 First aid kit **210**
 Fittings
 – For tow-starting and towing **211**
 Flashing when locking/unlocking **31**
 Flat tire, Flat Tire Monitor
 FTM **82**
 Flat Tire Monitor FTM **82**

Flat Tire Monitor
 – Snow chains **196**
 Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor
 TPM **83**
 Flat tire, warning lamp **83**
 Flat tire, wheel change **207**
 Flooding **113**
 Floor carpet, care **217**
 Floor mats, care **217**
 FM/AM station **142**
 Foot brake **113**
 Footwell lamps, refer to Interior
 lamps **78**
 Front airbags **80**
 FTM Flat Tire Monitor **82**
 Fuel, average consumption **64**
 Fuel consumption display
 – Average fuel consumption **64**
 Fuel filler flap
 – Unlocking in case of an electrical
 malfunction **186**
 Fuel gauge **63**
 Fuel quality **187**
 Fuel
 – Refer to Average fuel consumption **64**
 Fuel tank capacity, refer to Filling
 capacities **225**
 Fuel tank contents, refer to Filling
 capacities **225**
 Fuses **208**

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated
 universal remote control **101**
 Gasoline **187**
 Gasoline quality **187**
 Gas station recommendation **131**
 Gear change **59**
 Gear change
 – Automatic transmission with
 Steptronic **56**
 – Manual transmission **55**
 Gear display, automatic transmission
 with Steptronic **56**

Gear display, refer to Displays
 in the instrument cluster **58**
 Gearshift lever **58**
 Gearshift lever
 – Automatic transmission with
 Steptronic **56**
 – Manual transmission **55**
 General driving notes **112**
 Glove compartment **107**
 GPS navigation, refer to Navigation
 system **120**
 Grilles, refer to Air vents **95**
 Gross vehicle weight, refer to
 Weights **224**

H

Hand brake, refer to Parking
 brake **52**
 Hand-held transmitter, alternating
 code **102**
 Hands-free microphone **16**
 Hardtop, refer to Retractable
 hardtop **39**
 Hazard warning system **16**
 HD Radio **143**
 Head airbags **80**
 Headlamp control, automatic **76**
 Headlamp courtesy delay feature **75**
 Headlamp flasher **53**
 Headlamp flasher, indicator
 lamp **15**
 Headlamps, care **216**
 Headlamps, cleaning **55**
 Headliner **17**
 Heating **95**
 Heating
 – Mirrors **46**
 – Rear window **97, 100**
 – Seats **43**
 Heavy cargo, stowing **115**
 Height adjustment
 – Seats **42**
 – Steering wheel **47**
 Height, refer to Dimensions **223**
 High-beam Assistant **77**

High beams **77**
 High beams/low beams, refer to
 High-beam Assistant **77**
 High beams, headlamp
 flasher **77**
 High beams, indicator
 lamp **15**
 Hills **113**
 Hill start assistant, refer to
 Drive-off assistant **89**
 Holder for beverages **109**
 Holder for remote control, refer to
 Ignition lock **50**
 Homepage **6**
 Hood **197**
 Horn **12**
 Hot exhaust system **112**
 House number, entering for
 navigation **122**
 Hydroplaning **113**

Ice warning, refer to External
 temperature warning **62**
 Icy roads, refer to External
 temperature warning **62**
 Identification marks
 – Tires **192**
 iDrive **18**
 iDrive
 – Changing the date and
 time **66, 67**
 – Changing the units of measure
 and display format **66**
 Ignition **50**
 Ignition key position 1, refer to
 Radio ready state **50**
 Ignition key position 2, refer to
 Ignition on **50**
 Ignition key, refer to Remote
 control with integrated
 key **28**
 Ignition lock **50**
 Ignition
 – Switched off **50**
 – Switched on **50**
 Indication of a flat tire **83**

Indicator and warning lamps **15**

Indicator and warning lamps, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM **85**

Individual air distribution **96**

Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM **83**

Inflation pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure **189**

Inflation pressure warning, tires **82**

Information on navigation data **120**

Initializing

- Compass, refer to Calibrating **103**
- Flat Tire Monitor FTM **82**
- Refer to Setting the time and date **67**

Installation location

- Telephone **107**

Instrument cluster **14**

Instrument lighting **78**

Instrument panel, refer to Instrument cluster **14**

Instruments, refer to Cockpit **12**

Integrated key **28**

Integrated universal remote control **101**

Interactive map **126**

Interior equipment **101**

Interior lamps **78**

Interior lamps

- Remote control **31**

Interior rearview mirror **47**

Interior rearview mirror

- Automatic dimming **47**
- Compass **103**

Interior temperature, setting, refer to Air conditioner **96**

Interior temperature, setting, refer to Automatic climate control **98**

Interlock, refer to Disengaging the remote control **56**

Intermediate destinations **128**

Internet page **6**

Intersection, entering for navigation **122**

Interval display, service requirements **69**

iPod/iPhone **161**

J

Jacking points **207**

K

Keyless Go, refer to Comfort Access **34**

Keyless opening and closing, refer to Comfort Access **34**

Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile **28**

Key, refer to Integrated key/remote control **28**

Kickdown

- Automatic transmission with Steptronic **56**

L

Lamps and bulbs, bulb replacement **204**

Lamps, replacing, refer to Lamps and bulbs **204**

Language on Control Display **68**

Lap-and-shoulder belt, refer to Safety belts **44**

Lashing eyes, securing cargo **115**

Launch Control **60**

Leather, care **216**

LED, light-emitting diodes **204**

Length, refer to Dimensions **223**

Letters and numbers, entering **23**

License plate lamp, bulb replacement **207**

Light-alloy wheels, care **216**

Light control **76**

Light-emitting diodes LED **204**

Lighter

- Connecting electrical devices **104**

Lighting

- Instruments **78**
- Lamps and bulbs **204**

Limit, refer to Speed limit **73**

Load **115**

Loading **114**

Lockable lug bolts, refer to Lug bolt lock **207**

Lock buttons, doors, refer to Locking **33**

Locking

- From the inside **33**
- From the outside **30**
- Setting the confirmation signals **31**

Locking the vehicle

- From the inside **32**
- From the outside **30**
- Without remote control, refer to Comfort Access **34**

Low beams **75**

Low beams, automatic, refer to High-beam Assistant **77**

Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support **43**

Lug bolt lock **207**

Lumbar support **43**

M

Maintenance **202**

Maintenance requirements **202**

Maintenance, service requirements **69**

Maintenance system, BMW **202**

Malfunction

- Automatic transmission with Steptronic **57**
- Door lock **32**
- Fuel filler flap **186**
- Parking brake **53**

Malfunction warnings, refer to
 Check Control **71**
 Manual air distribution **96**
 Manual mode **59**
 Manual mode, automatic transmission with Step-tronic **57**
 Manual mode
 – Transmission lock **60**
 Manual operation
 – Door lock **32**
 – Driver's door **32**
 – Fuel filler flap **186**
 – Transmission lock, automatic transmission **57**
 Map, destination entry **126**
 Map in split screen **133**
 Map view **132**
 Marking on approved tires **196**
 Marking, run-flat tires **195**
 Master key, refer to Remote control with integrated key **28**
 Maximum cooling **99**
 Maximum speed, winter tires **196**
 M dual clutch transmission with Drivelogic
 – Launch Control **60**
 – Neutral **59**
 – Reverse gear **59**
 – Transmission lock, releasing manually **60**
 Medical kit, refer to First aid kit **210**
 Memory, refer to Seat and mirror memory **45**
 Menus, operating, iDrive **18**
 Menus, refer to iDrive operating concept **19**
 Message list, traffic bulletins **134**
 Microfilter
 – For air conditioner **97**
 – With automatic climate control **100**
 Minimum tread, tires **194**

Mirror
 – Mirror memory, refer to Seat and mirror memory **45**
 Mirrors
 – Automatic Curb Monitor **46**
 – Exterior mirrors **45**
 – Folding in, before driving into a car wash **46**
 – Heating **46**
 – Interior rearview mirror **47**
 Mobile communication devices in the vehicle **113**
 Mobile phone **166**
 Mobile phone, installation location, refer to Center armrest **107**
 Modifications, technical, refer to Safety **6**
 Monitor, refer to Control Display **18**
 MP3 player **160**
 Multifunction switch
 – Refer to Turn signals/headlamp flasher **53**
 Multimedia **149**
 Music collection **156**
 Music search **157**
 Music, storing **156**

N

Navigation **120**
 Navigation data **120**
 Navigation data, updating **120**
 Navigation system
 – Destination entry by voice **126**
 Nets, refer to Storage compartments **108**
 New wheels and tires **195**
 NORMAL program, Dynamic Driving Control **89**
 Nozzles, refer to Air vents **95**
 Nozzles, refer to Ventilation **97**
 Nylon rope, refer to Tow rope **213**

O

OBD Onboard Diagnostics **203**
 Octane rating, refer to Gasoline quality **187**
 Odometer **62**
 Oil additives **200**
 Oil change interval, service requirements **69**
 Oil consumption **198**
 Oil level **198**
 Oil, refer to Engine oil **198**
 Oil types, alternative **200**
 Oil types, approved **200**
 Old batteries, disposal **208**
 Onboard computer, refer to Computer **63**
 Onboard Diagnostics OBD **203**
 Onboard monitor, refer to Control Display **18**
 Onboard vehicle tool kit **204**
 Opening and closing
 – Comfort Access **34**
 – From the inside **32**
 – From the outside **30**
 – Using the door lock **32**
 – Using the remote control **30**
 Operating concept, iDrive **18**
 Outside-air mode
 – Automatic climate control **100**
 Outside air, refer to Recirculated air mode **96, 100**
 Overheating of engine, refer to Coolant temperature **63**

P

Paint, vehicle **216**
 Pairing, mobile phone **166**
 Park Distance Control PDC **93**
 Parked vehicle, condensation **114**
 Parking aid, refer to PDC **93**
 Parking lamps **75**
 Parts and accessories **7**

Passenger airbags, deactivating **81**

Passenger side mirror, tilting **46**

PDC Park Distance Control **93**

Personal Profile **28**

Pinch protection

- Windows **38**

Plastic, care **217**

Pollen

- Refer to Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter with automatic climate control **100**
- Refer to Microfilter for air conditioner **97**

Position, storing **123**

Postal code, entering in navigation **122**

Power, refer to Engine data **222**

Power windows, opening and closing **38**

Power windows, refer to Windows **37**

Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM **83**

Pressure, tires **189**

Pressure warning, tires **82**

Pressure warning, tires

- Flat Tire Monitor **82**
- Tire Pressure Monitor **83**

Programmable memory buttons, iDrive **22**

Protective function, refer to Pinch protection

- Windows **38**

Push-and-turn switch, refer to Controller **18**

R

Radiator fluid, refer to Coolant **200**

Radio-operated key, refer to Remote control with integrated key **28**

Radio ready state **50**

Radio ready state

- Switched off **50**
- Switched on **50**

Radio setting, refer to Radio ready state **50**

Rain sensor **54**

Random **150**

Random playback **150**

Range **64**

RDS **143**

Reading lamps **79**

Rear lamps

- Bulb replacement **206**

Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps **206**

Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps

- Bulb replacement **206, 207**

Rearview mirror, refer to Mirrors **45**

Rear window defroster **97, 100**

Recirculated air mode **96, 100**

Reclining seat, refer to Backrest **42**

Recommended tire brands **196**

Remaining range, refer to Range **64**

Remote control

- Battery replacement **36**
- Comfort Access **34**
- Malfunction **31, 35**
- Removing from the ignition lock **50**
- Trunk lid **31**
- Universal **101**

Replacement fuses, refer to Spare fuses **208**

Replacement remote control **28**

Replacing wheels/tires **195**

Reporting safety defects **8**

Restraining systems

- Refer to Safety belts **44**

Restraint system

- For children **48**

Retaining straps, securing cargo **115**

Retractable hardtop

- Convenience operation **30**
- Opening and closing **40**
- Remote control **30**

Retreaded tires **196**

Reverse gear

- Automatic transmission with Steptronic **56**
- Manual transmission **55**

Road, avoiding **130**

Road detour **130**

Roadside Assistance **180**

Roadside parking lamps **77**

RON gasoline quality **187**

Roof load capacity **224**

Rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing **213**

Route **131**

Route criteria, route **130**

Route, displaying **131**

Route section, bypassing **131**

RPM, refer to Engine data **222**

RSC Runflat System Component, refer to Run-flat tires **195**

Rubber components, care **217**

Run-flat tires **195**

Run-flat tires

- Tire inflation pressure **189**

S

Safety **6**

Safety-belt height adjustment **44**

Safety belts **44**

Safety belts

- Care **217**
- Damage **44**
- Indicator/warning lamp **44**
- Reminder **44**

Safety systems

- Airbags **80**
- Safety belts **44**

Satellite radio **143**

Saving fuel **116**

Scale, changing during navigation **133**

- Screen, refer to Control Display **18**
- Screw thread for tow fitting **212**
- Search, refer to BMW Search **181**
- Seat adjustment, electric **43**
- Seat adjustment, mechanical **42**
- Seat and mirror memory **45**
- Seat Belt Reminder, refer to Safety belt reminder **44**
- Seat belts
 - Refer to Safety belts **44**
- Seat heating **43**
- Seats
 - Adjusting **42**
 - Adjusting electrically **43**
 - Heating **43**
 - Memory, refer to Seat and mirror memory **45**
 - Storing the setting, refer to Seat and mirror memory **45**
- Selector lever
 - Automatic transmission with Steptronic **56**
- Selector lever lock, overriding **57**
 - Lock, refer to Changing selector lever positions, shift-lock **56**
 - Positions **56**
- Sensors, care **217**
- Service and warranty **7**
- Service requirements, CBS Condition Based Service **202**
- Service requirements, display **69**
- Service, Roadside Assistance **210**
- Servotronic **90**
- Settings and information **65**
- Settings, configuring, refer to Personal Profile **28**
- Settings on Control Display **68**
- Setting the clock, 12h/24h format **67**
- Shifting
 - Automatic transmission with Steptronic **57**
 - Manual transmission **55**
 - Sport automatic transmission **59**
- Shiftlock
 - Automatic transmission, refer to Changing selector lever positions **56**
- Shift paddles on steering wheel **57**
- Shift paddles on the steering wheel **60**
- Side airbags **80**
- Side windows, refer to Windows **37**
- Sitting safely **42**
- Ski bag, refer to Through-loading opening with integrated transport bag **105**
- Slot for remote control **50**
- Snap-in adapter, mobile phone **174**
- Snap-in adapter, refer to Center armrest storage compartment **107**
- Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics **203**
- Socket, refer to Connecting electrical devices **104**
- Software part number **166**
- SOS, refer to Emergency Request, initiating **209**
- Spare fuses **208**
- Special destinations, navigation **124**
- Specified oil types **200**
- Speed, average **64**
- Speed limit **73**
- Speedometer **14**
- Split screen **22**
- Split screen map settings **133**
- Spoken instructions, navigation **132**
- SPORT+ program, Dynamic Driving Control **89**
- SPORT program, Dynamic Driving Control **89**
- Sport program with automatic transmission with Steptronic **57**
- Sport program with sport automatic transmission **59**
- Spray nozzles, refer to Cleaning the windshield and headlamps **55**
- Stability control systems **87**
- Start/Stop button
 - Starting the engine **51**
 - Switching off the engine **51**
- Starting aid **210**
- State/province, selecting for navigation **121**
- Stations, stored **148**
- Station, storing **142**
- Status information, iDrive **21**
- Status of Owner's Manual **6**
- Steering wheel
 - Adjusting **47**
 - Lock **50**
 - Locking with Comfort Access **34**
 - Shift paddles **57, 60**
- Steptronic, refer to Automatic transmission with Steptronic **56**
- Stopping
 - Engine **51**
- Storage compartments **108**
- Storage nets **104**
- Storage, tires **196**
- Storing the seat position, refer to Seat and mirror memory **45**
- Storing the vehicle **218**
- Street, entering for navigation **122**
- Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires **189**
- Summer tires, tread **194**
- Suspension settings **88**
- Switches, refer to Cockpit **12**
- Switch for Dynamic Driving Control **88**

Switching off

– Engine 51

– Vehicle 51

Symbols 6

T

Tachometer 62

Tailgate, opening from the inside 33

Tailgate, refer to Trunk lid 33

Tail lamps 206

Tail lamps

– Bulb replacement 206, 207

Technical changes, refer to Safety 6

Technical data 222

Telephone, adjusting volume 169

Telephone, installation location, refer to Center armrest 107

TeleService 179

Temperature, air conditioner 97

Temperature, automatic climate control 98

Temperature, changing the unit of measure 66

Temperature, coolant 63

Temperature display

– External temperature 62

– External temperature warning 62

– Setting the unit 66

Temperature, engine oil 63

Theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 36

Thigh support adjustment 43

Third brake lamp, refer to Center brake lamp 207

Through-loading opening with integrated transport bag 105

Tilting the passenger side mirror 46

Time

– Setting the time 66

Tire age 193, 195

Tire damage 194

Tire identification marks 192

Tire inflation pressure

– Loss 84

Tire pressure monitoring, refer to FTM 82

Tire Pressure Monitor

TPM 83

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

– Resetting the system 84

– System limitations 84

– Warning lamp 85

Tire Quality Grading 193

Tires, changing 195

Tires, flat tire 207

Tire size 192

Tires, pressure loss 85

Tires, pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 83

Tires, run-flat tires 195

Tire tread 194

Toll roads, route 130

Tone 140

Tool kit, refer to Onboard vehicle tool kit 204

Tools, refer to Onboard vehicle tool kit 204

Torque, refer to Engine data 222

Tow bar 213

Tow fitting

– Screw thread 212

Tow fittings

– For tow-starting and towing 211

Towing 211

Towing methods 213

Town/city, navigation 121

Tow rope 213

Tow-starting 211, 213

TPM, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 83

Traction control 87

TRACTION program, Dynamic Driving Control 88

Traffic bulletins, navigation 134

Transmission

– Automatic transmission with Steptronic 56

– Dual clutch transmission 58

– Launch Control 60

– Lock, refer to Changing selector lever positions 56

– Manual transmission 55

– Neutral 59

– Overriding selector lever lock 57

– Positions 58

– Releasing the transmission lock manually 60

– Reverse gear 59

Transporting children safely 48

Tread, tires 194

Treble, tone 140

Trip-distance counter, refer to Trip odometer 62

Triple turn signal activation 53

Trip odometer 62

Trips, planning 128

Trunk

– Capacity 224

– Comfort Access 35

– Lamp, refer to Interior lamps 78

Trunk lid

– Comfort Access 35

– Emergency unlocking 34

– Opening from the inside 33

– Opening from the outside 33

– Remote control 31

– Opening from the inside 33

– Opening from the outside 33

Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 223

Turning lamps, refer to Adaptive light control 76

Turn signal

– Indicator/warning lamp 14

Turn signals 53

Turn signals

– Bulb replacement, front 205

– Triple turn signal activation 53

U

- Uniform Tire Quality Grading/UTQG [193](#)
- Unintentional alarms, avoiding [37](#)
- Units
 - Average fuel consumption [66](#)
- Units of measure, changing on Control Display [66](#)
 - Temperature [66](#)
- Universal remote control [101](#)
- Unlocking
 - From the inside [33](#)
 - From the outside [30](#)
 - Hood [197](#)
 - Setting the unlocking characteristics [30](#)
 - Trunk lid [35](#)
 - Without remote control, refer to Comfort Access [34](#)
- Upholstery care [216](#)
- USB audio interface [161](#)
- USB interface [107](#)

V

- Vacuum cleaner, connecting, refer to Connecting electrical devices [104](#)
- Vehicle
 - Battery replacement [208](#)
 - Breaking in [112](#)
- Vehicle care [216](#)
 - Dimensions, refer to Dimensions [223](#)
 - Identification number [166](#)
 - Identification number, refer to Engine compartment [197](#)
- Vehicle jack [207](#)
 - Paint [216](#)
 - Storage [218](#)
- Vehicle, switching off [51](#)
 - Washing [215](#)
 - Weight [224](#)
- Ventilation
 - Draft-free [97](#), [100](#)
 - Refer to Climate control [95](#)
- Vents, refer to Air vents [95](#)

- Vents, refer to Ventilation [100](#)
- Version of navigation data [120](#)
- Video playback [151](#)
- Voice activation, mobile phone [173](#)
- Voice activation, short commands [226](#)
- Voice activation system [24](#)
- Volume, setting [140](#)

W

- Warning and indicator lamps [15](#)
- Warning messages, refer to Check Control [71](#)
- Warning signal volumes [141](#)
- Warning triangle [210](#)
- Washer/wiper system [54](#)
- Washer fluid reservoir [55](#)
- Washing, vehicle [215](#)
- Water on roads [113](#)
- Welcome lamps [75](#)
- Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions [223](#)
- Wheel change [207](#)
- Wheels and tires [189](#)
- Wheels, changing [195](#)
- Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM [82](#)
- Width, refer to Dimensions [223](#)
- Wind deflector [40](#)
- Window, convenience operation [30](#)
- Windows, defrosting and removing condensation
 - Air conditioner [97](#)
 - Automatic climate control [100](#)
- Windows, pinch protection [38](#)
- Windshield
 - Cleaning [55](#)
- Windshield, defrosting, refer to Defrosting windows [97](#)
- Windshield wash [54](#)

- Windshield washer fluid [55](#)
- Windshield wash
 - Filling capacity, reservoir [225](#)
 - Nozzles [55](#)
- Windshield wiper blades, changing [204](#)
- Windshield wiper, refer to Washer/wiper system [54](#)
- Winter storage, care [218](#)
- Winter tires, suitable tires [196](#)
- Winter tires, tread [194](#)
- Wiper blades, changing [204](#)
- Wiper fluid [55](#)
- Wood, care [217](#)
- Word match concept, navigation [23](#)
- Working in the engine compartment [197](#)
- Wrench/screwdriver, refer to Onboard vehicle tool kit [204](#)

X

- Xenon headlamps
 - Bulb replacement [205](#)

Y

- Your individual vehicle [6](#)
- Your individual vehicle
 - Settings, refer to Personal Profile [28](#)

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

More about BMW



bmwusa.com

The Ultimate Driving
Machine

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

01 41 2 604 231 ue



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 231 - 03 10 500

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com